



## U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17

REPORT NUMBER #####

NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION

SILVER SPRING, MD 20910

### **IMPLEMENTING A NEXT GENERATION STOCK ASSESSMENT**

### **ENTERPRISE**

*AN UPDATE TO NOAA FISHERIES' STOCK ASSESSMENT IMPROVEMENT PLAN*

EDITED BY ...

NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE, OFFICE OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

SILVER SPRING, MD 20910

DATE

18

19 **Executive Summary**

20 **Section I: Introduction to the Stock Assessment Improvement Plan**

21 **Ch. 1: Background and Purpose**

- 22 1.1 What is a stock assessment?
- 23 1.2 What is the context for stock assessments?
- 24 1.3 How are stock assessments conducted?
- 25 1.4 Why should stock assessments be improved?
- 26 1.5 What is in this updated SAIP?

27

28 **Ch. 2: Accomplishments of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Enterprise**

- 29 2.1. The 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan
- 30 2.2. Improvements and impacts of NOAA's stock assessments in the 21<sup>st</sup> century
- 31 2.3. Summary

32

33 **Section II: The Current State of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Enterprise**

34 **Ch. 3: Overview of NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Programs**

35 **Ch. 4: Data Collection to Support Stock Assessments**

- 36 4.1. Data types and collection methods
  - 37 4.1.1. Catch data
  - 38 4.1.2. Abundance data
  - 39 4.1.3. Biological data
  - 40 4.1.4. Ecosystem data
- 41 4.2. Strengths and challenges

42

43 **Ch. 5: Analytical Tools**

- 44 5.1. Introduction
- 45 5.2.0. Preparing stock assessment input data
- 46 5.3. Stock assessment models
  - 47 5.3.1. Principles
  - 48 5.3.2. Outputs and uses
  - 49 5.3.3. Categories
  - 50 5.3.4. Application and choice
- 51 5.4. Assessment uncertainty and decision support
  - 52 5.4.1. Characterizing scientific uncertainty
  - 53 5.4.2. Decision support
- 54 5.5. Strengths and challenges

55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95

**Ch. 6: Quality Assurance in the Stock Assessment Process**

- 6.1. National guidance on science quality assurance
- 6.2. Overview of the stock assessment review process for fisheries management
- 6.3. Regional stock assessment review processes
  - 6.3.1. Southeast Data, Assessment, and Review (SEDAR)
  - 6.3.2. Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee (SAW/SARC)
  - 6.3.3. Stock Assessment Review (STAR)
  - 6.3.4. Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR)
  - 6.3.5. North Pacific Stock Assessment Review Process
- 6.4. Quality assurance of stock assessments for partner organizations
- 6.5. Strengths and challenges

**Section III: NOAA Fisheries’ Next Generation Stock Assessment Enterprise**

**Ch. 7: An Introduction to the Future of NOAA Fisheries’ Stock Assessments**

- 7.1 Summary of challenges and the need for improvement
- 7.2 Holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments
- 7.3 Innovative science
- 7.4 Timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment processes

**Ch. 8: Holistic and Ecosystem-Linked Stock Assessments**

- 8.1 Introduction
- 8.2 Why stock assessments should be expanded
- 8.3 When to expand stock assessments
- 8.4 How to expand stock assessments
- 8.5 Multiple stocks in an ecosystem
- 8.6 Conclusions

**Ch. 9: Innovative Science for Improving Stock Assessments**

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Innovations in data collection and processing
  - 9.2.1 Fishery-independent data
  - 9.2.2 Fishery-dependent data
  - 9.2.3 New data types
  - 9.2.4 Advanced sampling technologies
  - 9.2.5 Improving data management, processing, and delivery
- 9.3 Innovations in stock assessment modeling
  - 9.3.1 Improved software and advanced models
  - 9.3.2 Using multiple models to generate advice
  - 9.3.3 Risk assessment for fisheries management decisions

|     |  |
|-----|--|
| 96  | 9.3.4 Holistic stock assessment models   |
| 97  | 9.3.5 Expanding and improving process studies  |
| 98  | 9.4 Conclusions  |
| 99  |  |
| 100 | <b>Ch. 10: An Efficient and Effective Stock Assessment Enterprise</b>                |
| 101 | 10.1 Introduction  |
| 102 | 10.2 Classifying stock assessments   |
| 103 | 10.3 Prioritizing stock assessments  |
| 104 | 10.3.1 A national protocol for prioritizing stock assessments                        |
| 105 | 10.3.2 Stock assessment targets—an expansion of the national prioritization protocol |
| 106 | 10.4 Establishing a right-sized stock assessment enterprise                          |
| 107 | 10.5 Standardized approaches   |
| 108 | 10.5.1 Stock assessment analytical tools   |
| 109 | 10.5.2 The stock assessment process  |
| 110 | 10.6 Conclusions   |
| 111 |  |
| 112 | <b><u>Section IV: Summary, Recommendations, and Implementation</u></b>               |
| 113 | <b><u>Acronyms</u></b>   |
| 114 | <b><u>Appendix A:</u></b>  |
| 115 |  |

116 **Executive Summary**

117

118

119

120 PLACEHOLDER, TO BE COMPLETED

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

# **SECTION I. INTRODUCTION TO THE STOCK ASSESSMENT IMPROVEMENT PLAN**

132

133

134

## 135 Chapter 1—Background and Purpose

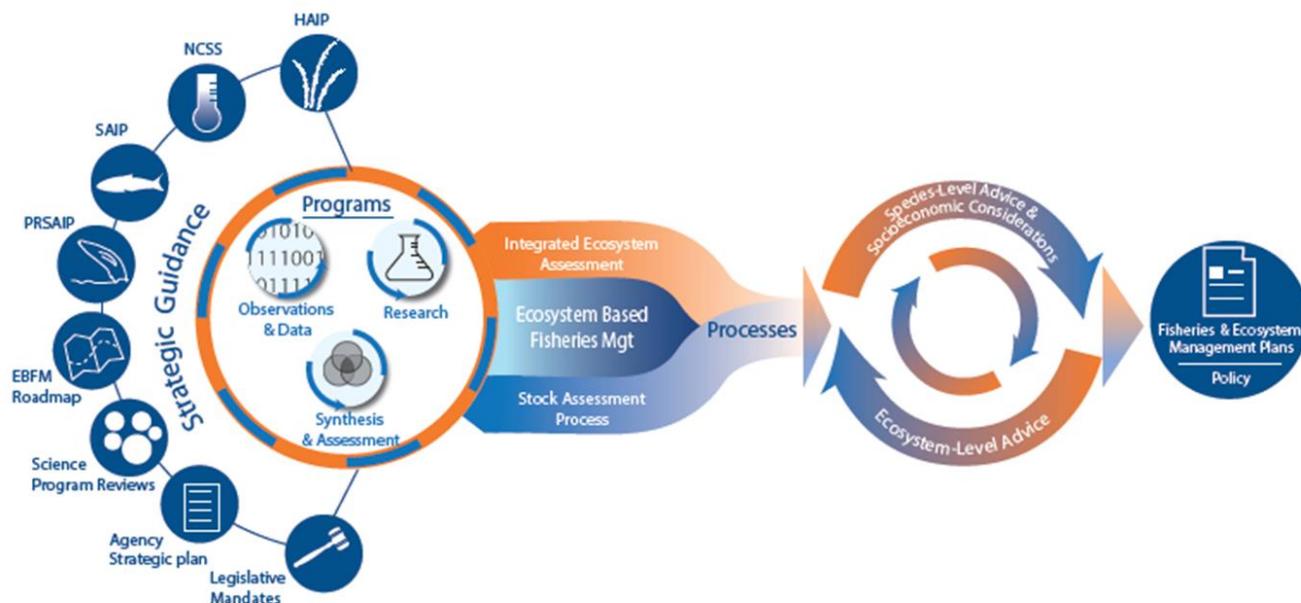
### 136 Chapter highlights:

- 137 • **This Stock Assessment Improvement Plan (SAIP) describes a vision for a Next Generation Stock**  
138 **Assessment Enterprise (NGSA) that improves timeliness and efficiency of assessments,**  
139 **prioritizes work, expands the scope of assessments, and uses innovative technologies and**  
140 **techniques to conduct assessments.**
- 141 • **Adaptive strategies need to be incorporated into the stock assessment process to account for**  
142 **changing ecosystems and a growing demand for assessments.**
- 143 • **Stock assessments provide necessary information to fishery managers and apply broadly to**  
144 **other aspects of coastal and ocean management and policy.**

145 In 2001, NOAA Fisheries published the SAIP. Effectively, this document sought to bolster NOAA's  
146 capacity and infrastructure for conducting assessments, and to expand the content and extent of these  
147 assessments. The SAIP also led to the development of important performance metrics that gauge  
148 progress in NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise. The 2001 SAIP provided a strategic vision that  
149 enhanced program performance in the years following the release of the SAIP (see Chapter 2 for an  
150 overview of accomplishments). Thus, the SAIP plays an important role in NOAA Fisheries' strategic  
151 efforts to advance the stock assessment enterprise, and the objectives of this SAIP update are to  
152 summarize the accomplishments and evolution of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise since  
153 the release of the original SAIP in 2001, and to outline a vision for the next generation of NOAA  
154 Fisheries' assessments.

155 Although the SAIP focuses on stock assessments, it also complements many other strategic efforts that  
156 collectively help NOAA Fisheries best accomplish its overall mission (Fig. 1.1). In particular, this new SAIP  
157 responds to results of recent independent reviews of NOAA Fisheries' science programs and helps  
158 facilitate progress toward fishery management approaches that are more ecosystem-based and climate-  
159 smart. The following sections describe NOAA Fisheries' NGSA Enterprise.

160



161  
162 **Figure 1.1.** NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs are guided by numerous strategic efforts and products to  
163 provide advice to fishery managers under an interdisciplinary ecosystem-based approach to fishery  
164 management. Strategic guidance includes the Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan (HAIP), the  
165 National Climate Science Strategy (NCSS), the Stock Assessment Improvement Plan for fisheries (SAIP)  
166 and Protected Resources (PRSAIP), the Ecosystem-Based Fisheries Management Roadmap (EBFM  
167 Roadmap), Science Program Reviews, Agency Strategic Plans, and Legislative Mandates. Ultimately, this  
168 process results in scientific advice necessary for developing fishery management plans (FMPs) and  
169 fishery ecosystem plans (FEPs).

170 **1.1. What is a stock assessment?**

171 **Stock assessments**—These assessments provide the scientific underpinning of successful and  
172 sustainable fishery harvest management. A stock assessment is based upon the scientific processes of  
173 collecting, accessing, analyzing, and reporting species demographic information, and provides an  
174 evaluation which summarizes the effects of fishing (and other drivers) on fish<sup>1</sup> populations, quantifies  
175 uncertainty, and supports projections of future catch and stock status. The assessment process  
176 culminates in a scientific product (report) that provides fishery managers with a basis for implementing  
177 sustainable harvest policies. Thus, stock assessments can be considered both a product and a process.  
178 Further, a stock assessment is operational science and is more focused than general research on the  
179 population dynamics of a harvested fish stock: The assessment is conducted with the specific intent of  
180 using the results to provide the scientific basis for fishery management decisions.

---

<sup>1</sup> The term “fish” is used throughout this document to collectively refer to all aquatic taxa affected by fishing in marine systems.

181 The three fundamental components of the stock assessment process include:

- 182 1. **Data collection and processing**—This information includes total catch from commercial,  
183 recreational, and subsistence fisheries; changes in abundance informed by scientific surveys  
184 and/or fishery catch rates; and biological data on fish stocks.
- 185 2. **Stock assessment modeling**—Mathematical models of stock and fishery dynamics are  
186 configured and then calibrated using analytical and statistical methods. These methods relate  
187 the models to patterns observed in the data used in the assessment.
- 188 3. **Developing and communicating recommendations**—Model results are summarized and  
189 bracketed by scientific uncertainty, then communicated as scientific advice for fishery  
190 managers.

191 Stock assessments provide advice on the following important aspects of a fish stock:

- 192 1. What are the biological limits to sustainable fishing and what fraction of the stock should be  
193 harvested each year? Addressing these questions generates **harvest policy** recommendations;  
194 i.e., control rules that provide a basis for determining an optimum harvest level that provides a  
195 sufficiently low risk of overfishing.
- 196 2. How hard have we been fishing and what is the current **stock status**? Is the stock **overfished** or  
197 undergoing **overfishing** (becoming overfished) relative to reference points that are linked to the  
198 harvest policy?
- 199 3. What short-term future catch level (**forecast**) would implement the harvest policy given the  
200 current stock status and prevailing environmental conditions?

201 **Harvest policies**—These policies are agreed-upon strategies for modulating catch to achieve a specified  
202 objective. In the United States, harvest policies are generally focused on the concept of maximum  
203 sustainable yield (MSY<sup>2</sup>), which is the maximum catch that can be harvested from a stock on a  
204 continuing basis. MSY is obtained when the fishing rate ( $F$ ) is sustained for the foreseeable future at a  
205 level that provides the maximum average catch. Thus, MSY is a biologically based upper limit for harvest  
206 of a particular stock. However, various factors such as ecosystem and economic considerations, as well  
207 as uncertainty in the calculation of MSY and the capability of actually maintaining  $F$  at the  $F_{MSY}$  level, lead  
208 to recommendations for optimum yield that are somewhat less than MSY. Overall, stock assessments  
209 play an important role in the development and implementation of harvest policies. In addition to  
210 considering individual stock dynamics from assessments, these policies are an ideal place in the  
211 management process to infuse ecosystem and socioeconomic considerations.

212 **Stock status**—These determinations are based primarily on estimates of stock biomass and fishing  
213 intensity relative to established management objectives, such as the level of biomass and fishing

---

<sup>2</sup> Most stock assessments in the United States use proxies for MSY that are based on life history characteristics (e.g., natural mortality, growth, maturity, fecundity, and proportional harvest by age or size).

214 intensity that produce the MSY ( $B_{MSY}$  and  $F_{MSY}$ ). Fishing at a higher rate than  $F_{MSY}$  is considered  
215 “overfishing,” and if a stock falls below a specified fraction of  $B_{MSY}$ , the stock is considered to be  
216 “overfished.” Stock assessments provide the scientific information necessary to determine stock status.  
217 Knowing a stock’s status has helped fishery managers modify their harvest policies to reduce instances  
218 of overfishing and rebuild many previously overfished stocks.

219 **Forecasts**—Short-term predictions of annual harvest levels and stock status (under prevailing conditions)  
220 are used to help identify optimum yields and rebuilding strategies. There are uncertainties in these  
221 calculations, so stock assessments strive to provide a probability-based risk framework in which the  
222 chance of overfishing is balanced with the attainment of a large fraction of the maximum possible  
223 biological yield. Providing a probabilistic framework allows fishery managers, stakeholders, and other  
224 interested parties to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty. The level of uncertainty in  
225 assessment forecasts is reduced in cases where high-quality data exists, particularly with respect to the  
226 reproduction (newly born or young organisms) that will support future harvest opportunities. Beyond  
227 prevailing conditions, a wide range of scenarios and strategies can be explored. These evaluations seek  
228 to define the range of reasonable harvest strategies and management options under varying conditions  
229 (e.g., ecosystem, socioeconomics) to identify a set of robust choices for achieving the goals of  
230 maximizing fishing opportunity and minimizing overfishing. Forecasts are a proactive result of stock  
231 assessments and offer another critical place to infuse ecosystem and socioeconomic information in the  
232 fishery management process.

## 233 **1.2. What is the context for stock assessments?**

234 Stock assessments are fundamental to sustainable fisheries management. Assessments use a  
235 quantitative framework to provide recommendations to fishery managers on how much biological catch  
236 can occur while preventing overfishing. In the U.S. system, fishery managers use these  
237 recommendations to set annual catch limits (ACLs), which represent targets for managed fisheries. By  
238 law, ACLs cannot exceed the levels recommended from the scientific process. To buffer against  
239 uncertainty, managers often set lower catch targets based on risk policies that take into account  
240 uncertainties in the stock assessment, ecosystem, and management processes. Thus, stock assessments  
241 play a key role in fishery management by setting scientifically based and legal upper bounds on annual  
242 harvest levels. Although assessments allow the agency to meet its fishery management mandates, they  
243 also support other aspects of NOAA Fisheries’ mission, such as ecosystem-based fisheries management  
244 (EBFM) via integrated ecosystem assessments (IEAs). NOAA Fisheries leads the nation’s efforts to  
245 evaluate the status and condition of a wide range of living marine resources. These resources include a  
246 broad array of marine taxa, and especially those targeted for commercial, recreational, or subsistence  
247 harvest. NOAA’s stock assessment efforts are implicitly mandated by key sections of the Magnuson-  
248 Stevens Act (MSA), including the following:

- 249 • Status of stocks relative to established reference points
- 250 • Whether stock rebuilding needs to occur

- 251       • Annual quotas available for catch and the most suitable harvest rates  
252       • Other impacts to these marine taxa  
253       • Potential impacts to the food webs, habitats, and ecosystems associated with these marine taxa

254 Under the MSA, approximately 474 fishery stocks are managed by 8 regional fishery management  
255 councils<sup>3</sup> and the Highly Migratory Species Division of NOAA Fisheries<sup>4</sup>. The agency also provides various  
256 levels of support for the management of living marine resources found in state waters, international  
257 waters, and related jurisdictions. Further, other mandates merit consideration of the status of and  
258 impacts to marine stocks. Examples include:

- 259       • The cumulative effects to an ecosystem (National Environmental Policy Act – NEPA).  
260       • Adequate forage for protected species (Marine Mammal Protection Act – MMPA Endangered  
261       Species Act – ESA).  
262       • Effects of other activities on living marine resources and fishing (NEPA).  
263       • Effects of fishing on other parts of marine ecosystems (NEPA).  
264       • Effects of development and water quality on fish stocks (Coastal Zone Management Act – CZMA  
265       Clean Water Act – CWA).

266 These additional mandates are rely on knowledge of how the various ecosystem factors affect stock  
267 status. Facets of other mandated management activities, whether from system-level advice or protected  
268 species advice, inform and are informed by species-specific stock assessments. As such, stock  
269 assessments have wide utility, mandated need, and broad application within the full suite of scientific  
270 responsibilities executed by NOAA Fisheries and its partners to manage living marine resources in the  
271 United States.

272 Within NOAA Fisheries' scientific portfolio, extensive programs are executed to support and enhance  
273 stock assessments (Fig. 1.1). Data collection programs are fundamental to obtaining and processing the  
274 traditional data inputs used to inform stock assessments (Chapter 4). The agency strives to sustain and  
275 improve its data collection infrastructure, use of advanced sampling technologies, electronic  
276 technologies for data collection and data management, and analytical tools, education, and training for  
277 current and future professionals. This portfolio includes several programs that focus on population  
278 dynamics, where scientists work to develop and implement stock assessment models and conduct  
279 research to improve models. This research can consist of studies that seek to expand assessments by  
280 including ecosystem and socioeconomic factors.

281 NOAA Fisheries' suite of internal programs directs and funds crucial research and promotes the  
282 transition from research to operational science. The main project themes include exploring ecosystem  
283 linkages, climate change impacts, economic impacts, fisheries dynamics, and habitat dependencies. The

---

<sup>3</sup> <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/management/councils/>

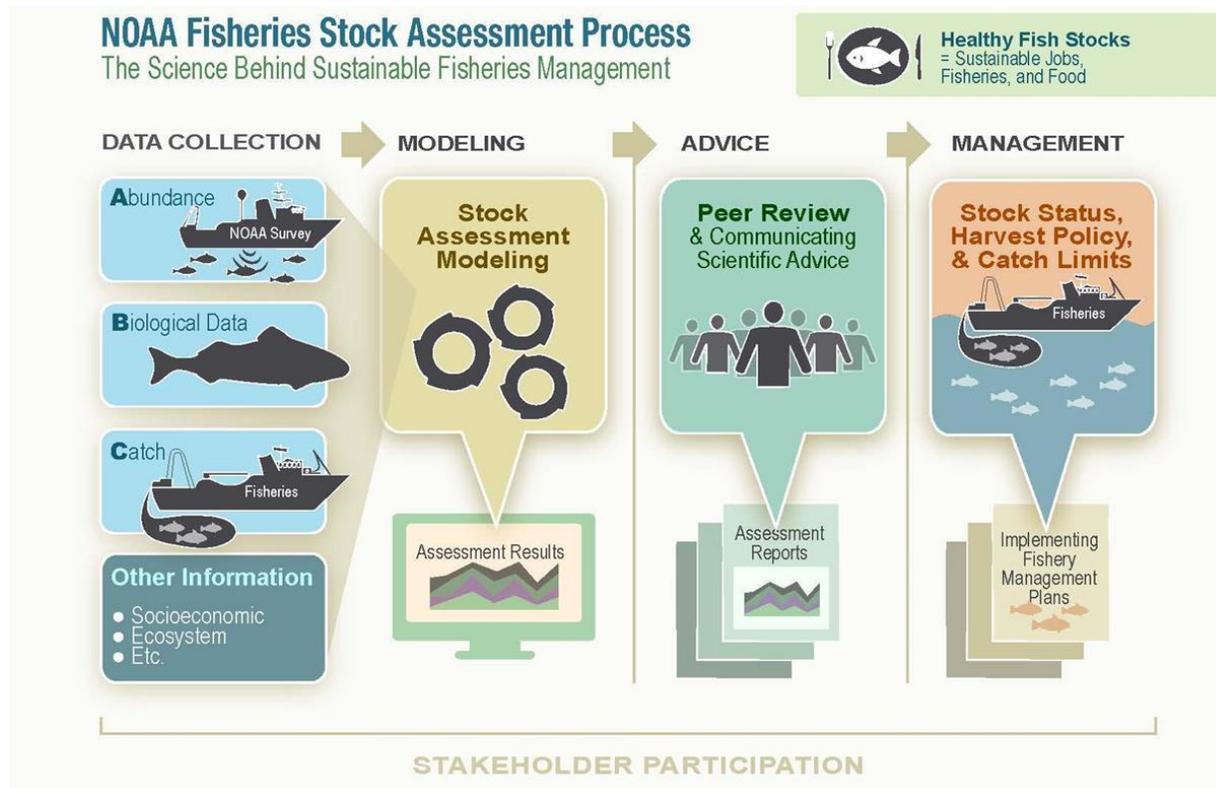
<sup>4</sup> <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/hms/>

284 agency also supports analytical methods development, management strategy evaluations, harvest  
285 control rule development, and operational improvements with innovative technologies. These funds are  
286 distributed broadly throughout NOAA Fisheries and to agency partners to ensure that the most qualified  
287 individuals are addressing the most important problems. Further, many efforts not only have application  
288 to stock assessments but also cross-cut the agency by informing protected species science, habitat and  
289 ecosystem assessments, and other marine resource management considerations. As such, efforts to  
290 bolster stock assessments have been beneficial to a wide range of activities, just as the stock assessment  
291 process has benefited from the extensive suite of scientific efforts conducted by NOAA Fisheries. The  
292 interplay among the variety of strategic guidance (Fig. 1.1) and related programs clearly demonstrates  
293 the value of and need for coordinating related efforts across NOAA Fisheries' entire science enterprise.  
294 One aim of this document is to advocate for the continued integration and interchange across the full  
295 suite of NOAA Fisheries mandates and programs.

### 296 **1.3. How are stock assessments conducted?**

297 The stock assessment process consists of a full suite of efforts, including data collection and processing,  
298 stock assessment modeling, and developing and communicating recommendations (Fig. 1.2). Each step  
299 in the process requires technical expertise as well as substantial coordination and collaboration with  
300 multiple partners and stakeholders. The quantitative advice provided by assessments is generally  
301 derived from models that include mathematical representations of population and fishery dynamics,  
302 and are analyzed using statistical methods. Assessments rely on data collected from commercial,  
303 recreational, and subsistence fisheries; from NOAA research vessels and chartered vessels; and by  
304 academic and industry partners. Data crucial for stock assessments include a full and accurate  
305 accounting of the total catch (and discards) over time, measures that track changes in stock abundance,  
306 and stock-specific biological information. Where available and appropriate, additional data, such as  
307 information on ecosystem and socioeconomic trends, can be incorporated to make assessments more  
308 comprehensive.

309 In addition to data collection and sampling, models must be developed to integrate a wide range of  
310 information for a stock or group of stocks, model outputs must be reviewed, and ultimately  
311 management advice must be provided. For some, the term "stock assessment" invokes particular facets  
312 of the process, such as conducting scientific surveys or running assessment models. However, in this  
313 document we use the term "stock assessments" to mean the full process from data collection to the  
314 provision of advice.



315  
316 **Figure 1.2.** Overview of the stock assessment process from data collection through the provision of  
317 scientific advice to fishery managers. Stakeholders may participate in each step of the assessment  
318 process.

319 **1.4. Why should stock assessments be improved?**

320 There are three primary reasons to reevaluate NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment efforts, given the  
321 number of developments, advances, challenges, and opportunities that have occurred since the SAIP  
322 was published in 2001.

- 323 **1. Expanding the scope of stock assessments**—The scope of many stock assessments, which tend  
324 to focus on single-species population dynamics, needs to expand to better account for the direct  
325 impacts of changing conditions that affect overall productivity. For instance, stock productivity  
326 can be influenced by dynamics in habitats, oceanography, predators and prey, toxins, diseases,  
327 parasites, climate-scale factors, and other relevant variables. (Note that the term “ecosystem” is  
328 used from now on to refer collectively to these living and non-living dynamics that affect marine  
329 species.) The need to incorporate ecosystem dynamics is demonstrated indirectly by  
330 unexplained issues that can arise when running diagnostic tests on certain stock assessment  
331 models. For example, when observed patterns in data are not well represented by an  
332 assessment model's structure, the model may not account for crucial aspects of the ecosystem,  
333 which is necessarily a simplification of stock dynamics.

334  
335 In addition, ecosystem information can improve assessments in cases where fishing intensity has  
336 been reduced and the natural variation in fish stocks makes it more difficult to estimate fishing  
337 rates when they are at a scale similar to natural processes. More direct evidence for the need to  
338 improve ecosystem linkages comes from studies that reveal the strength of interactions among  
339 species and between species and their environment. Biological factors that drive stock  
340 productivity, such as natural mortality, growth, and reproduction, are not strictly inherent  
341 properties of a species, but instead result from a species' interaction with its ecosystem. As  
342 fishing and other factors impact ecosystem dynamics, related shifts should be expected in the  
343 biological factors that form a basis for calculating sustainable fishery rates. In some cases,  
344 ecosystem changes may be small enough to justify the use of simpler approaches, and in other  
345 cases there are not sufficient data to look closely at ecosystem effects. Nevertheless, there is a  
346 clear need to evaluate the effects of ecosystem dynamics on stock productivity to the extent  
347 possible, and develop harvest control rules that are robust to these changes. These goals may be  
348 best accomplished by linking certain stock assessments to ecosystem dynamics.

349  
350 The original SAIP recognized the need to improve linkages between stock assessments and  
351 ecosystem factors; however, the document did not explain these needs in depth. In fact, the  
352 original SAIP recommended initiating a dialogue between NOAA Fisheries and the public to  
353 determine how far-reaching and comprehensive these additional considerations should be. This  
354 dialogue has been ongoing, and now in this updated SAIP, the need for greater inclusion of  
355 ecosystem factors into stock assessments is paramount.

356  
357 Further, as the collection and understanding of socioeconomic information has improved, there  
358 has been an increase in the ability to account for socioeconomic dynamics in the provision of  
359 management advice. Federal fisheries law requires fishery managers to optimize yield for  
360 fisheries while achieving an acceptably low risk of overfishing (as mandated in National Standard  
361 1 of the MSA). One tool for conducting such investigations is a management strategy evaluation  
362 (MSE). NOAA Fisheries has the capability to conduct MSEs that characterize the performance of  
363 a science–management–fishery system. However, resources required for MSEs vary  
364 substantially depending on the type of analysis being conducted. To date, only a few MSEs have  
365 been used to inform fishery management decisions. Of these MSEs, most have addressed  
366 ecosystem effects while fewer have examined the economic consequences of addressing  
367 uncertainty in assessments. Reinforcing the use of and capacity to conduct MSEs is crucial for  
368 helping fishery managers make wise decisions that promote sustainable fisheries and resilient  
369 coastal communities.

370  
371 **2. Prioritizing stock assessments**—Considering the number of demands on what are projected to  
372 be highly limited resources, the wise allocation of resources to conduct stock assessments  
373 increasingly requires that assessments are more formally prioritized. NOAA Fisheries' budget for

374 improving and expanding assessments has grown since the 2001 SAIP, and the number of  
375 assessments conducted per year has increased with the budget. However, in recent years the  
376 resources available and number of assessments conducted has essentially plateaued. However,  
377 there are still increasing demands to assess more stocks and conduct more frequent  
378 assessments of some stocks. One of the major gaps identified in the original SAIP was to conduct  
379 assessments of all managed stocks; therefore, there is a need to evaluate and prioritize stock  
380 assessment efforts during the next decade and beyond. Although advocating for more resources  
381 is warranted, the number, scope, extent, and focus of the full national stock assessment  
382 enterprise merits more thorough examination to balance resources to best meet assessment  
383 needs with limited capacity.

384  
385 Additionally, there is tension among the rate at which stock assessments are conducted, the  
386 thoroughness of those assessments, and the degree of transparency throughout the process.  
387 Independent reviews of stock assessments are necessary to ensure that the best science  
388 information is being used to guide management and to gain the trust of the affected public.  
389 However, during the past 15 years, the increase in stock assessments has highlighted the need  
390 to balance the frequency of more rigorous, independent peer reviews of assessments with a  
391 streamlined review processes to ensure timely assessments for management decisions. The  
392 mandate to specify annual catch limits for all federally managed stocks suggests a demand for  
393 more frequent production of stock assessments. Certain assessments will always require  
394 thorough reviews, although streamlined processes should be explored where possible to  
395 increase assessment throughput.

396  
397 **3. Utilizing innovative methodology and technology**—Most assessment models estimate stock  
398 abundance and mortality rates by calibrating the models with observed trends in fishing  
399 intensity and indices of relative abundance from fishery-independent sources (e.g., resource  
400 surveys). The models tend to perform better when there is a contrast in fishing intensity and  
401 abundance over time (i.e., periods of high and low fishing rates and abundance). However, as  
402 fishery management has become more effective at controlling fishing rates, the degree of  
403 contrast in the observations is diminishing for many stocks. Therefore, another source of  
404 calibration data may be required, and one potentially beneficial option may be the use of  
405 advanced sampling technologies to create surveys that directly measure absolute stock  
406 abundance, not just relative abundance. For instance, the use of acoustic and optical (photo and  
407 video) sampling technologies can be used to improve understanding of the degree to which  
408 traditional methods are sampling available fish, which simplifies the ability to better scale  
409 abundance measurements to actual abundance (rather than relative measures). Even if not  
410 estimated for every year in an assessment, these measures of absolute abundance would help  
411 anchor a stock assessment at reasonable levels of stock biomass. Additionally, advanced  
412 sampling technologies can be used to expand sampling efforts into areas that are not easily  
413 sampled with more traditional methods, thereby improving data for assessments.

414  
415 Beyond sampling technologies, new analytical tools are needed to improve standard assessment  
416 models. Some important developments include advances in multispecies models and  
417 approaches that facilitate better connections between stock assessments and ecosystem  
418 dynamics, as well as improved analytical tools for data-limited stocks. Further, methodological  
419 advances could be adopted from other fields, such as infrastructural and analytical  
420 considerations associated with big data, risk analyses, financial forecasting, chaotic dynamics,  
421 and related quantitative approaches. The exploration of innovative methodologies warrants an  
422 evaluation of novel data needs. New approaches may rely on new sources of information, such  
423 as enhanced ocean observing systems for more efficient sampling, genomics, isotopes, fatty  
424 acids, and other chemical, electronic, or acoustic signatures of fish stocks and their ecosystems  
425 (Chapter 8).

426  
427 Much of the theory on which the stock assessment enterprise is based has had a solid, multi-  
428 decade history of testing. However, to address current issues in fisheries science and  
429 management, the proposal, development, and evaluation of theoretical advancements should  
430 be pursued. Thus, NOAA Fisheries' NGS A Enterprise must provide the ability, expectation,  
431 venues, and time for the agency to play a leading role in expanding and advancing the stock  
432 assessment enterprise.

### 433 **1.5. What is in this SAIP update?**

434 Ultimately, the goals of this SAIP update are to summarize the accomplishments and evolution of NOAA  
435 Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise since the release of the original SAIP in 2001. In addition, this  
436 update outlines a vision for the next generation of NOAA Fisheries' assessments. With these goals in  
437 mind, the three fundamental components of this SAIP include the following:

- 438 • A recap of accomplishments from the original SAIP (Chapter 2)
- 439 • An updated description of the current stock assessment enterprise (Section II)
- 440 • A description of the NGS A Enterprise (Section III)

441

442

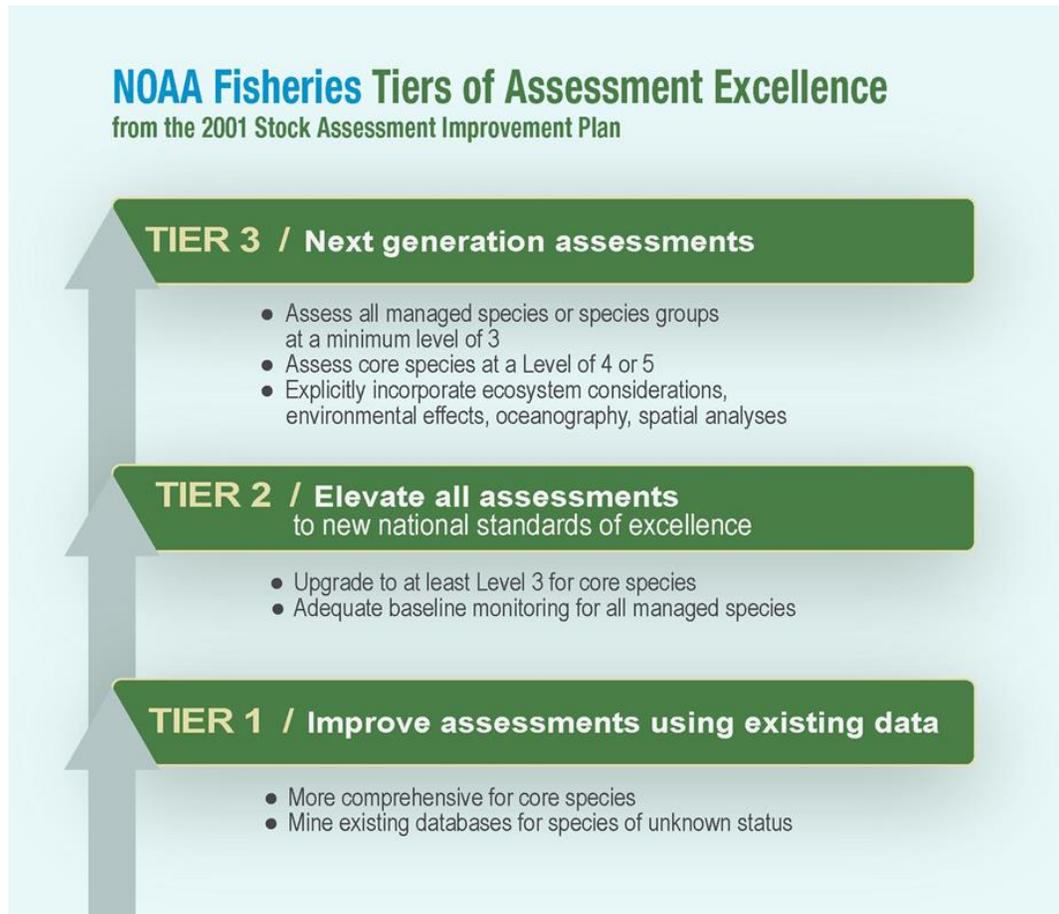
## 443 **Chapter 2—Accomplishments of NOAA Fisheries' Stock** 444 **Assessment Enterprise**

### 445 **Chapter highlights:**

- 446 • **An increased quantity and quality of stock assessments in support of strong fishery**  
447 **management has greatly reduced overfishing and facilitated rebuilding of many overfished**  
448 **stocks.**
- 449 • **Stock assessment program funds have increased in response to the 2001 Stock Assessment**  
450 **Improvement Plan (SAIP), expanding the capacity for data collection, monitoring, and**  
451 **advancing stock assessment science.**
- 452 • **NOAA Fisheries has a national infrastructure for stock assessment programs.**
- 453 • **More is now known about stock dynamics. The increased attention has highlighted the**  
454 **importance of expanding many assessments to consider factors such as changes in the**  
455 **ecosystem.**

### 456 **2.1. The 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan**

457 Generally, U.S. fisheries are recognized around the world as being successfully and sustainably managed  
458 (Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO), 2014). This success is due mainly to a scientifically driven  
459 management process that relies on the advice from the NOAA Fisheries stock assessment enterprise.  
460 Since the release of the SAIP in 2001, the subsequent expansion and advancement of the stock  
461 assessment program has drastically improved the quantity and quality of stock assessments being used  
462 to support fishery management. The 2001 SAIP defined three Tiers of Assessment Excellence to serve as  
463 milestones for NOAA's stock assessment enterprise (Fig. 2.1). The three tiers centered on assessment  
464 "levels" that were defined in the 2001 SAIP (not defined or used here), and the 2001 document  
465 recommended an initial effort to strive for Tier 2 at a minimum. Meanwhile, the 2001 SAIP also initiated  
466 a dialogue on the potential importance of taking more of an ecosystem approach to stock assessments.  
467 Although the original strategy was useful for expanding the scope and number of stocks assessed,  
468 Section III of this document describes a new strategy that shifts the focus from moving up the tiers for  
469 all stocks to setting stock-specific priorities.



470  
471  
472  
473  
474

**Fig. 2.1** Summary of the three Tiers of Assessment Excellence, as described in the 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement Plan (Mace et al., 2001). **Note:** The “levels” referenced in the figure were defined in the 2001 SAIP, but not defined here to avoid confusion with later chapters.

475 The 2001 SAIP concluded with 10 recommendations that set a strategic direction for NOAA Fisheries’  
476 stock assessment enterprise (NMFS, 2001). Those 10 recommendations can be combined into 6 general  
477 categories that served as new focus areas for NOAA Fisheries:

- 478
1. Increase overall budget and staff to expand data collection and stock assessment capabilities.
  - 479 2. Enhance existing educational and training programs in quantitative fisheries and ecosystem  
480 science, fisheries economics, and social sciences to ensure an available pool of new federal  
481 fisheries scientists. In addition, develop comprehensive training programs to enhance the  
482 scientific skills of current federal scientists.
  - 483 3. Improve stock assessments by enhancing partnerships and cooperative programs with other  
484 federal and state agencies, private foundations, universities, environmental groups, recreational  
485 and commercial fishing organizations, individual fishermen, and other stakeholders with an  
486 interest in data collection for stock assessments.

- 487 4. Increase federal and academic research to advance stock assessment methods.
- 488 5. Strengthen public awareness and credibility of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment science by
- 489 expanding internal and external outreach and communications efforts.
- 490 6. Create an overall strategic plan that provides comprehensive guidance toward achieving the
- 491 mission of NOAA Fisheries.
- 492

493 NOAA Fisheries relied on the strategic direction put forth in the 2001 SAIP to improve the quality and  
494 quantity of its stock assessments by supporting advancements in data collection, research, workforce  
495 capacity, public messaging, and integrated strategic planning. In addition, a National Research Council  
496 report (NRC, 1998) identified gaps in NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment program, with emphasis on data  
497 collection, analytical methods, assessment processes, and education and training. To address federal  
498 mandates, the 6 focus areas identified from the 2001 SAIP, the 1998 NRC report, and other sources,  
499 NOAA Fisheries expanded its efforts toward building a robust and reliable stock assessment enterprise.  
500 These advances have created a strong foundation that aids the development and implementation of an  
501 NGSA Enterprise.

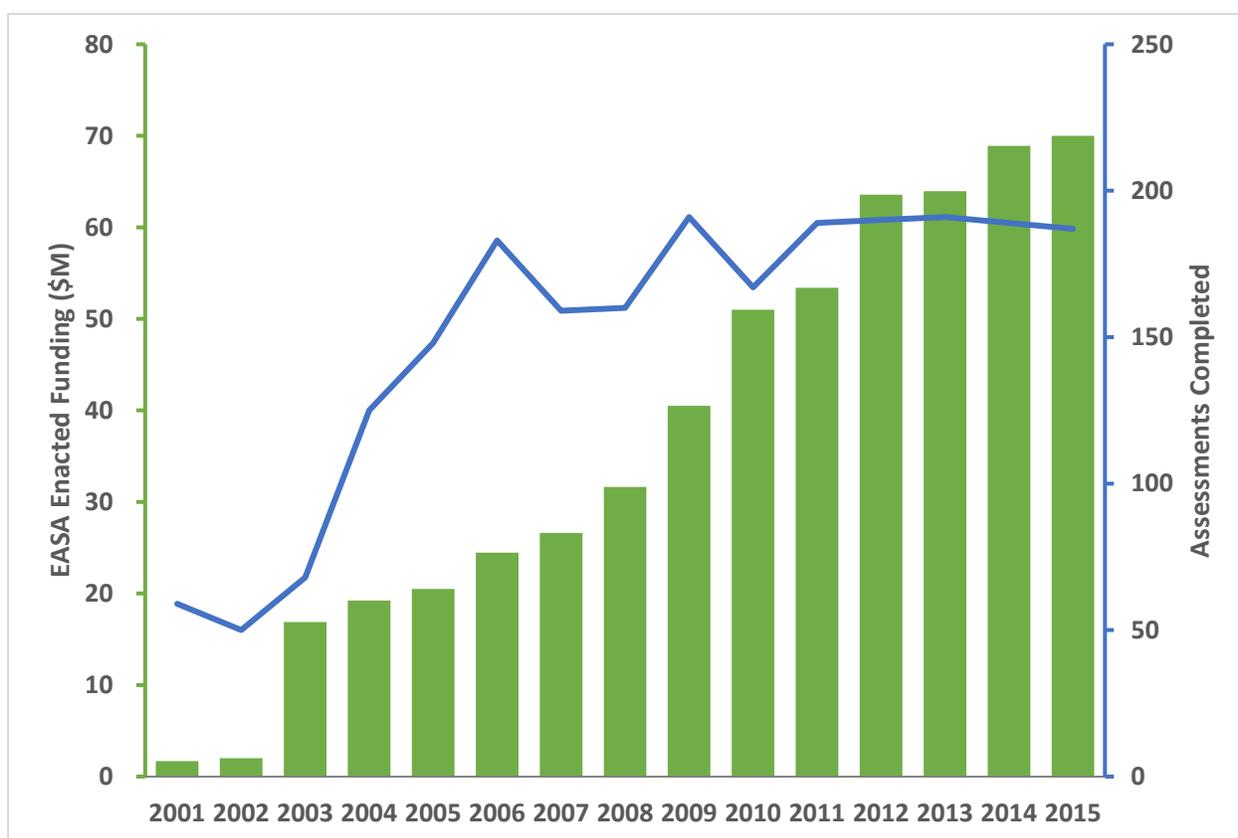
## 502 **2.2. Improvements and Impacts of NOAA's Stock Assessments in the 21<sup>st</sup>** 503 **Century**

504 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments have directly improved an overall understanding of the state of U.S.  
505 fisheries and have enhanced the science needed to manage for sustainability. With knowledge of stock  
506 status, fishery managers can make informed decisions to meet their management targets. From 2001 to  
507 2014, NOAA Fisheries' capacity for conducting stock assessments increased substantially, with more  
508 than 50 assessments conducted in 2001 and almost 190 assessments in 2015, a 217% increase in  
509 assessment output (Fig. 2.2). During this period, NOAA Fisheries' assessments provided the information  
510 to reduce the number of stocks experiencing overfishing by 30% and reduce the number of overfished  
511 stocks by 24% (Fig. 2.3). Thus, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise has played a major role in  
512 establishing sustainable U.S. fisheries during the past 15 years.

513 In 2005, NOAA Fisheries developed the Fish Stock Sustainability Index (FSSI), a performance measure  
514 that tracks the status and assessments of 199 core stocks identified according to regional priorities. Each  
515 stock tracked is awarded points if its status is known and if it is not considered overfished or undergoing  
516 overfishing. The FSSI combines this information into a single number by totaling the 199 FSSI stocks (the  
517 maximum possible value for the FSSI when summed across all categories and all stocks is 1,000).  
518 Significant effort has been dedicated toward conducting assessments of FSSI stocks in particular, and  
519 toward eliminating overfishing on all stocks. As a result, the FSSI has been steadily increasing since its  
520 inception toward its maximum value of 1,000 (Fig. 2.3). This trend is a simple and clear measure that  
521 emphasizes the success of a federal fishery management process that manages for sustainability.

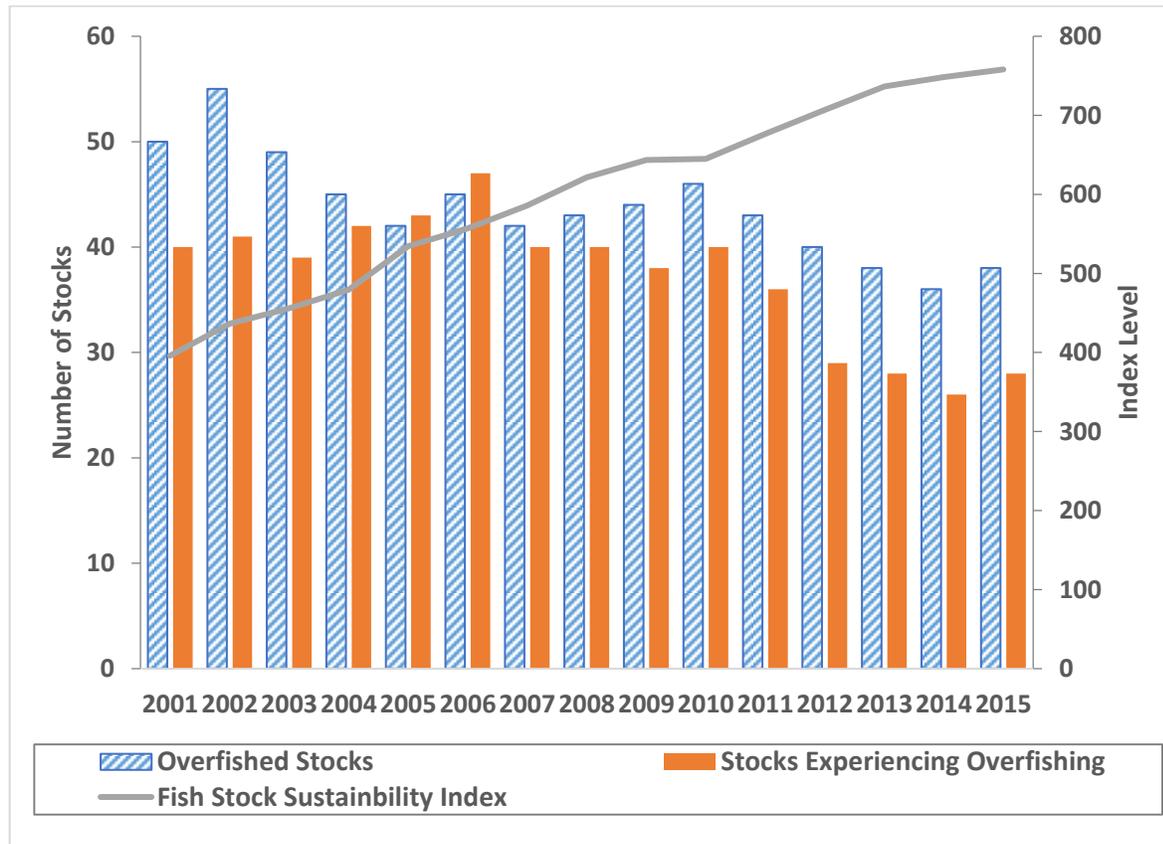
522 The quantity and quality of stock assessments increased because of budget and staffing increases in  
523 NOAA Fisheries' core stock assessment budget lines (2001 SAIP, focus area 1). In particular, the 2001  
524 SAIP supported growth of the Expand Annual Stock Assessments (EASA) budget line from \$1.7 million in  
525 2001 to \$70.0 million in 2015 (Fig. 2.2). This growth in overall capacity enabled a range of investments  
526 that improved the national stock assessment program. Broadly, these investments included advances in  
527 data collection and monitoring programs, research in advanced sampling technologies and stock  
528 assessment methods, workforce capacity, and the stock assessment peer review process. Although the  
529 total number of stock assessments conducted each year has stabilized recently, the science behind the  
530 assessments has continued to improve.

531



532

533 **Figure 2.2.** Comparison of the total number of stock assessments completed each year for federally  
534 managed stocks (right axis, blue line) and growth in the EASA budget line (left axis, green bars), 2001–  
535 2015. **Notes:** 1) Tracking of stock assessments before 2005 was less complete; 2) The FSSI was calculated  
536 retroactively for 2001–2004; 3) Budget lines other than EASA also contribute to stock assessments.



537

538 **Fig. 2.3.** Status of federally managed fish stocks (number of overfished stocks and stocks experiencing  
539 overfishing; left axis) over time compared with the NOAA Fisheries' Fish Stock Sustainability Index (right  
540 axis), 2001–2015.

541 **2.2.1. Data Collection and Monitoring Capabilities**

542 The data collection and monitoring capabilities of NOAA Fisheries' has expanded substantially.  
543 Improvements to catch monitoring programs have resulted in better coordination of data on  
544 commercial fishery statistics and better estimation of recreational statistics. The Fisheries Information  
545 System (FIS) program was established to coordinate fishery statistics and to facilitate public access to  
546 comprehensive, high-quality, and timely fisheries information. Another effort is the Marine Recreational  
547 Fisheries Statistics Survey (MRFSS), a long-standing program originating out of the Magnuson Fishery  
548 Conservation and Management Act of 1976 that has served as a foundational source of marine  
549 recreational fisheries information. With an increasing demand for improved stock assessments, it  
550 became clear that improvements to MRFSS were also needed. Therefore, in 2007, MRFSS was revised  
551 and renamed the Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP).

552 Another investment made by NOAA Fisheries was to expand the regional fisheries observer programs  
553 that are coordinated under a National Observer Program (NOP). Funding for observers has tripled since

554 1999, resulting in an increase in the number of fisheries monitored by onboard observers from 17 to 48  
555 (including 10 catch share fisheries) and the number of observer days from 55,000 to 80,210. This  
556 increase in fishery-dependent data collection has improved the accuracy of NOAA Fisheries' stock  
557 assessments, improved the characterization of fishery bycatch, and resulted in better overall fishery  
558 management. However, for many fisheries observer coverage remains low. In these cases, without  
559 further expansion, stock assessments will be challenging and may provide highly uncertain results.

560 In an effort to expand and improve fishery-dependent sampling, NOAA Fisheries has been evaluating  
561 and incorporating electronic monitoring and electronic reporting (EM/ER). Electronic reporting relies on  
562 digital data collection interfaces to allow reporting by fishermen, whereas electronic monitoring relies  
563 on video cameras to remotely observe fishery operations. These technologies can be used in a variety of  
564 fishery monitoring programs, and in fact strategic plans have been developed in each region to identify,  
565 evaluate, and prioritize implementation of these technologies<sup>5</sup>.

566 In addition to expanding fishery-dependent data collection, NOAA Fisheries also invested in developing  
567 and/or improving scientific (fishery-independent) surveys. For instance, the West Coast Groundfish  
568 Bottom Trawl Survey expanded in spatial coverage, improving monitoring of approximately 90  
569 commercially fished stocks along the coasts of Washington, Oregon, and California. Also, in  
570 collaboration with the South Carolina Department of Natural Resources' Marine Resource Monitoring  
571 and Assessment Program (MARMAP), NOAA Fisheries established the Southeast Fishery Independent  
572 Survey (SEFIS) program, which uses trap and video surveys to monitor reef fish in South Atlantic waters.  
573 This survey increased the accuracy, precision, and usefulness of data available for assessments and  
574 facilitated a greater than two-fold increase in the size of annual survey samples. Atlantic sea scallops  
575 also benefitted from improved survey capability by creating a habitat camera mapping system (HabCam)  
576 to augment the dragged dredge survey. This expansion significantly increased the number of scallops  
577 that could be observed by the survey, resulting in more accurate estimates of scallop abundance and  
578 habitat. Another example of expanded capacity is the Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment  
579 Program (NEAMAP), a new survey that complements the NOAA Fisheries' bottom trawl survey by  
580 sampling shallower inshore habitat.

581 Although the development of new surveys has expanded total data collection capabilities, the overall  
582 cost of data collection has continued to increase. Scientific resource surveys are further limited by the  
583 availability of NOAA research vessels and funding to support chartering University–National  
584 Oceanographic Laboratory System (UNOLS) vessels and commercial industry vessels. Therefore, when  
585 considering the capacity required to provide management advice on all stocks under NOAA Fisheries'  
586 purview, there is a need to sustain NOAA's fleet infrastructure. Also required is improved survey  
587 coverage with integrated ocean observation systems. This coordination will help address information  
588 gaps and spatial uncertainties in stock assessments in a changing environment.

---

<sup>5</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/advanced-technology/electronic-monitoring/index>

### 589 **2.2.2. Education and Training of Stock Assessment Scientists**

590 The overall demand for more and improved stock assessments resulted in the realization that there  
591 were not enough stock assessment scientists in NOAA Fisheries to meet the growing assessment  
592 demand. Furthermore, as indicated by focus area 2 of the 2001 SAIP and NRC (1998), existing university  
593 programs were not capable of supplying enough stock assessment scientists to meet the expanding  
594 need. This awareness prompted investments in each fisheries science center to support educational  
595 efforts and connections among NOAA Fisheries and academia across the regions. One program that  
596 resulted from this initial investment is the West Coast Groundfish Stock Assessment Training and  
597 Mentoring program at the University of Washington, which is now considered one of the premiere  
598 institutions for training stock assessment scientists.. Another example is the Research Training and  
599 Recruitment (RTR) program in the southeast region. This program was designed to create a pipeline to  
600 introduce undergraduate students to stock assessment science, train graduate students, and recruit  
601 stock assessment scientists to NOAA Fisheries. Unfortunately, the RTR program has been discontinued  
602 due to budget cuts, but given the value and need for this pipeline, restarting the program could prove  
603 beneficial.

604 Following the 2001 SAIP, NOAA Fisheries and NOAA Sea Grant expanded their joint fellowship programs  
605 in population dynamics and marine resource economics. Initially supporting approximately 3 fellows per  
606 year, the fellowship program grew to fund 6 fellows on average with a maximum of 12 awarded in 1  
607 year. Since the program's inception, more than 40% of fellows have gone on to work for NOAA Fisheries.  
608 Furthermore, to build capacity in ecosystem modeling, the NOAA Fisheries–Sea Grant fellowship  
609 program recently expanded to include quantitative ecology in general. NOAA also supports numerous  
610 other academic partnerships to facilitate education and training in mission-critical areas, including the  
611 Quantitative Ecology and Socioeconomics Training Program (QUEST), Cooperative Ecosystem Studies  
612 Units (CESUs), NOAA's 16 Cooperative Institutes (CIs), the Living Marine Resources Cooperative Science  
613 Center (LMRCSC), and many other programs coordinated by NOAA's Office of Education. Overall, the  
614 various educational programs have led to significant increases in the number of scientists with the  
615 quantitative skills necessary to provide scientific advice to fishery managers.

616 Despite initial investments in education and training, the need for qualified candidates has continued to  
617 exceed the number available. The gap in available stock assessment scientists was again illustrated in a  
618 2008 report from the Departments of Commerce and Education, "The Shortage in the Number of  
619 Individuals with Post-Baccalaureate Degrees in Subjects Related to Fishery Science" (U.S. Dept. of  
620 Commerce and U.S. Dept. of Education, 2008). In recognition of the ongoing shortage, NOAA Fisheries  
621 continues to expand its QUEST program to increase the number of academic faculty in these disciplines.  
622 The QUEST program now provides dedicated support to seven faculty and additional support to three  
623 rotating faculty. As NOAA-supported faculties continue to train individuals, the identified gap in qualified  
624 candidates will continue to decrease, thereby addressing SAIP focus area 2.

### 625 **2.2.3. Cooperative Research**

626

627 To comply with focus area 3, cooperative research programs were established at national and regional  
628 levels to increase data collection capabilities. These programs also fostered communication,  
629 coordination, and mutual respect among NOAA Fisheries and its stakeholders. In addition, cooperative  
630 research has been shown to improve associations among fishers, scientists, and managers (Hartley and  
631 Robinson, 2006; Johnson and van Densen, 2007; Johnson 2010) by increasing opportunities for  
632 successful and sustainable management. Investments in cooperative research have also facilitated the  
633 development of innovative approaches to collecting, processing, and reporting information on stocks  
634 that were previously unavailable. A number of fishery-independent surveys previously conducted  
635 exclusively on NOAA ships were complemented or replaced by surveys from chartered industry vessels.  
636 For instance, NOAA Fisheries' Atlantic Surfclam–Ocean Quahog Survey began chartering an industry  
637 vessel in 2012. The NOAA-supported Northeast Area Monitoring and Assessment Program (NEAMAP) is  
638 also conducted by an industry vessel and augments existing surveys conducted on NOAA ships in the  
639 Northwest Atlantic. Additionally, the main groundfish trawl surveys conducted along the U.S. West  
640 Coast and Alaska are implemented through industry charters. NOAA Fisheries continues to expand  
641 collaborations with industry as well as other partner agencies (e.g., the previously mentioned SEFIS  
642 survey) to support sustainable fisheries management that engages stakeholders at all levels.

#### 643 **2.2.4. Advancements in Fisheries Science**

644 NOAA Fisheries continues to support advancements in fisheries science (SAIP focus area 4) through the  
645 creation of several national working groups that focus on specific mission-critical topics. These programs  
646 are coordinated at NOAA Fisheries headquarters by the Office of Science and Technology, and many of  
647 these working groups manage internal funding to support regional projects that address high-priority  
648 issues, including improvements for stock assessments. In addition to supporting research, the funding  
649 opportunities foster collaboration and technology distribution throughout NOAA. Although the projects  
650 are led by NOAA scientists, collaboration with external groups is encouraged and results in partnerships  
651 with academics; commercial and recreational fishers; state, interstate, national, and international  
652 agencies; and non-governmental organizations. These partnerships have provided substantial  
653 improvements to NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment and monitoring capabilities.

654 Collectively in fiscal year 2015, almost \$14 million in funding was distributed across programs to support  
655 innovative research in stock assessments and other aspects of fisheries science. Over time, these  
656 investments have resulted in major advancements, resulting in improvements in the science used to  
657 support fisheries management. For example, the Assessment Methods Working Group provides national  
658 oversight to facilitate direct improvements in the stock assessment enterprise. This group oversees the  
659 NOAA Fisheries Toolbox<sup>6</sup>, which provides a suite of standardized interfaces for implementing stock  
660 assessment analyses. Several Toolbox techniques were developed or improved through research

---

<sup>6</sup> <http://nft.nefsc.noaa.gov/>

661 projects funded by working groups and are now publicly available and applied in operational stock  
662 assessments. The Assessment Methods Working Group also facilitates NOAA's annual support of the AD  
663 Model Builder Project<sup>7</sup>. The ongoing support of this project has allowed open access to AD Model  
664 Builder, a software package that serves as the basis for a large percentage of NOAA Fisheries' stock  
665 assessments as well as stock assessments around the world. Other working groups focus on various  
666 aspects of fisheries science, including the incorporation of ecosystem and habitat information in the  
667 assessment process; improvements to the efficiency of data collection and survey operations with  
668 innovative technologies; and enhancements to cooperative research and international collaborations.

### 669 **2.2.5. Peer Review Approaches**

670 Notable improvements to the fishery management process have resulted from establishing rigorous  
671 peer review methods for stock assessments. Although various review processes were in place before  
672 2001, substantial investments in stock assessment quality assurance have been made since the 2001  
673 SAIP. In part, these investments were driven by legislative mandates to ensure that the best scientific  
674 information available was provided to fishery managers. Investments were also made to increase the  
675 credibility of NOAA Fisheries science products among stakeholders (SAIP focus area 5), and increase  
676 transparency and opportunities for public engagement in the fishery management process. A national  
677 peer review process, called the Center for Independent Experts (CIE), was established to provide a  
678 rigorous independent review of emerging scientific methods and influential science products. Various  
679 regional processes were either created or improved since 2001, including the Southeast Data,  
680 Assessment, and Review (SEDAR); Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee  
681 (SAW/SARC) in the Northeast; Stock Assessment Review (STAR) in the Northwest; Western Pacific Stock  
682 Assessment Review (WPSAR); and the Plan Team process in the North Pacific. These regional processes  
683 all rely on the CIE when a higher degree of independence is required, particularly in the selection  
684 process of highly qualified reviewers. Overall, the level of quality assurance for stock assessments has  
685 vastly improved since the 2001 SAIP, resulting in a thorough and transparent fishery management  
686 process that uses high-quality advice as the basis for management decisions. Approaches to stock  
687 assessment quality assurance and peer reviews are covered in greater detail in Chapter 6.

### 688 **2.2.6. Communication and Outreach**

689 In the context of SAIP focus area 5, NOAA Fisheries has made a considerable effort to improve its  
690 communication and public outreach about stock assessments. Access to stock assessment reports has  
691 vastly improved, and the reports themselves have become comprehensive descriptions of the entire  
692 assessment. Although some of these reports can be difficult to understand, they offer a high degree of  
693 transparency. To improve access to assessment information, many reports now include upfront  
694 summaries of the primary results. NOAA Fisheries is continually improving its outreach and engagement  
695 strategy to convey information and maintain ongoing dialogues with a variety of audiences.

---

<sup>7</sup> <http://www.admb-project.org/>

696 Improvements have aimed to provide better information and engagement with stakeholders on the  
697 national stock assessment program and its performance, facilitate access to data used in stock  
698 assessments, improve communication within the national stock assessment program, and promote  
699 transparency in the assessment process and the resulting scientific advice. The Marine Resource  
700 Education Program (MREP), which is funded through a grant to the Gulf of Maine Research Institute, is a  
701 successful program designed to provide fishery stakeholders with an inside look at fisheries science and  
702 the management process.

703 Many new products have been developed to convey fishery stock assessment and management  
704 information to a variety of audiences. For instance, FishWatch<sup>8</sup> is a website designed by NOAA Fisheries  
705 to provide scientific information to consumers to encourage sustainable seafood choices. The Species  
706 Information System is a national database that stores stock assessment and fishery management  
707 information and offers access to summaries and results from assessments through a public portal<sup>9</sup>.  
708 NOAA Fisheries also generates several regular reports, such as annual reports to Congress on the status  
709 of stocks,<sup>10</sup> national stock assessment summary reports,<sup>11</sup> and annual summaries of commercial fishing  
710 statistics and economic impacts through Fisheries of the United States<sup>12</sup> and Fisheries Economics of the  
711 United States,<sup>13</sup> respectively. Completing these efforts provide broad access to the science that supports  
712 federal fisheries management.

713 Additionally, NOAA Fisheries welcomes opportunities to engage on assessment-related topics with  
714 various interested parties. These stakeholders include non-governmental organizations; NOAA and  
715 Department of Commerce leadership; Office of Management and Budget staff; Congressional  
716 representatives; and regional councils, both individually and nationally, through venues such as New  
717 Council Member Training, and the Council Coordination Committee and its Scientific Coordination  
718 Subcommittee. The incremental increases in appropriated funds, along with an improved public  
719 perception of NOAA Fisheries, suggest that overall expanded outreach and communication efforts have  
720 been effective in some areas. Nevertheless, communication and outreach efforts need to be expanded  
721 and improved. To achieve that goal, NOAA Fisheries will continue to seek funding and opportunities to  
722 improve strategies for communicating to and engaging with stakeholders on the stock assessment  
723 process.

#### 724 **2.2.7. Strategic Planning**

725 Focus area 6 from the 2001 SAIP has been addressed through significant expansion of the extent to  
726 which NOAA Fisheries conducts and coordinates strategic planning efforts. The SAIP itself represents

---

<sup>8</sup> <http://www.fishwatch.gov/about/index.htm>

<sup>9</sup> <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/sisPortal/sisPortalMain.jsp>

<sup>10</sup> [http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/fisheries\\_eco/status\\_of\\_fisheries/](http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/fisheries_eco/status_of_fisheries/)

<sup>11</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/stock-assessment/FishStockReports/index>

<sup>12</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/commercial-fisheries/fus/fus13/index>

<sup>13</sup> [http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/economics/publications/feus/fisheries\\_economics\\_2012](http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/economics/publications/feus/fisheries_economics_2012)

727 one of many focused efforts that advance or report on a fundamental aspect of NOAA Fisheries'  
728 scientific portfolio. As portrayed in Fig. 1.1, other focused strategic efforts include the Marine Fisheries  
729 Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan (NMFS, 2010); the National Climate Science Strategy (Link et al.,  
730 2015); strategic documents related to assessing protected marine species (NMFS, 2004 and 2013); and  
731 annual peer reviews of NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs.<sup>14</sup> Additionally, a number of regular reports  
732 provide updates and opportunities for strategic evaluation of specific programs. For instance, the  
733 National Bycatch Report<sup>15</sup> provides a species-level accounting of bycatch by U.S. fisheries, and the  
734 Fisheries Information System Annual Report<sup>16</sup> describes the status of NOAA Fisheries data collection  
735 programs. Together, the various plans and reports are combined under the broad category of  
736 Ecosystem-Based Fishery Management (EBFM). Finally, the focused strategic planning efforts are  
737 synthesized and funneled through a number of national efforts. Several of these larger efforts include  
738 strategic plans and Annual Guidance Memoranda produced at multiple levels (office, agency, and  
739 department) and are used to guide agency and program operations.

### 740 **2.3. Summary of the 2001 SAIP**

741 The 2001 SAIP has been an invaluable strategic planning document that facilitated vast improvements in  
742 NOAA fisheries' stock assessment enterprise. Resulting increases in funds for stock assessment science  
743 allowed NOAA Fisheries to improve many stock assessments and address the six focus areas of the 2001  
744 SAIP to varying degrees. As a result, the stock assessment programs and staff employed by NOAA  
745 Fisheries provide world-class scientific advice to resource managers. Despite the need for continuing  
746 advancements in the stock assessment enterprise (culminating in this new SAIP), it should not be  
747 overlooked that the U.S. fishery management system has been highly successful in achieving resource  
748 sustainability and community resiliency.

### 749 **References**

- 750 Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations (FAO). 2014. The state of the world fisheries  
751 and aquaculture 2014, 223 p. Rome.
- 752 Link, J. S., R. Griffis, and S. Busch (eds). 2015. NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy. NOAA Tech.  
753 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-155, 70 p.
- 754 U.S. Dept. Commer. and U.S. Dept. Educ. 2008. The shortage in the number of individuals with post-  
755 baccalaureate degrees in subjects related to fishery science. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-  
756 91, 84 p.

---

<sup>14</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/index>

<sup>15</sup> <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/Assets/Observer-Program/bycatch-report-update-2/NBR%20First%20Edition%20Update%202020%20Final.pdf>

<sup>16</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/Assets/FIS/documents/FIS%20Annual%20Report.pdf>

757

758

759

760

## **SECTION II. THE CURRENT STATE OF NOAA FISHERIES' STOCK ASSESSMENT ENTERPRISE**

761

762

763

## 764 **Chapter 3. Overview of NOAA Fisheries’ National Stock** 765 **Assessment Programs**

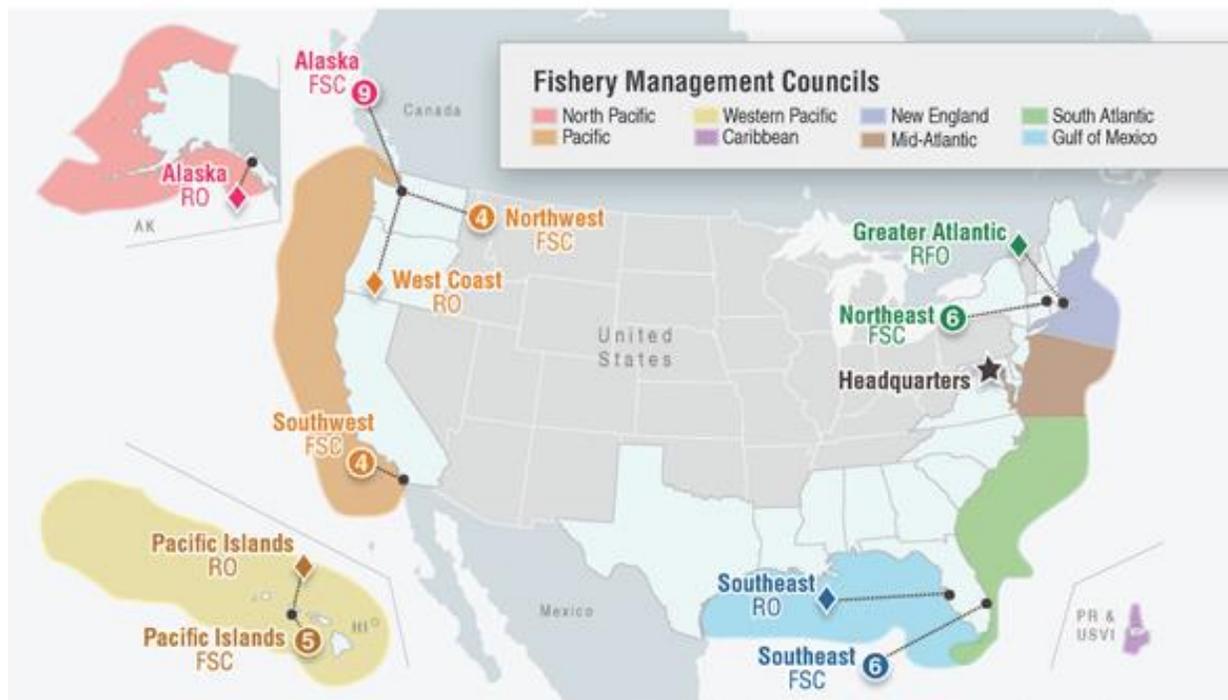
### 766 **Chapter highlights:**

- 767 • **NOAA Fisheries’ stock assessments provide scientific advice for federal fisheries managed by**  
768 **regional fishery management councils and other fisheries managed by state, interstate, and**  
769 **international organizations.**
- 770 • **Regional assessment programs face diverse issues due to the nature of regional fisheries,**  
771 **species, ecosystems, and governances.**
- 772 • **Despite regional differences, patterns have emerged in the methods used to conduct**  
773 **assessments for federally managed fisheries.**

774 NOAA Fisheries’ stock assessment programs provide global leadership in stock assessment science. The  
775 stock assessment enterprise is a combined system that operates through regional science–management  
776 partnerships and coordination, and national initiatives from headquarters offices. As described in  
777 Chapter 1, NOAA Fisheries is directed by federal law to provide scientific advice to eight Regional Fishery  
778 Management Councils and NOAA Fisheries’ Atlantic Highly Migratory Species Division for more than 473  
779 federally managed fish stocks, some of which are stock complexes that contain many individual stocks.  
780 NOAA Fisheries’ science centers coordinate with their respective regional offices to provide scientific  
781 advice to federal fishery managers. Further, NOAA creates partnerships with state, interstate, and  
782 international fishery management organizations, and NOAA scientists work collaboratively with these  
783 groups to conduct or assist with assessments of stocks that do not fall under federal jurisdiction. Figure  
784 3.1 shows the organization and responsibilities of NOAA Fisheries’ stock assessment enterprise.

785 The types of stocks managed vary across regions. There are notable differences in the types of fisheries;  
786 stakeholders affected; jurisdictions and their respective assessment processes supported (see Chapter  
787 6); and the natural ecosystems that support the productivity of fisheries. For example, many of the  
788 longest-standing and most lucrative commercial fisheries target groundfish and shellfish in temperate  
789 and cold waters (e.g., cod, pollock, scallops, crabs, and so on). In addition, several science centers  
790 conduct assessments of the nation’s most economically and ecologically valuable groundfish and  
791 shellfish (especially the Alaska and Northeast Science Centers). Despite these differences, common  
792 characteristics among regions can be used to maximum advantage when designing strategies for NOAA’s  
793 stock assessment programs.

## NOAA Fisheries Science to Support Fisheries Management



□ The Western Pacific FMC manages additional regions not depicted here.

## NOAA Fisheries Organization

| Regions          | Regional Offices (RO)   | Fishery Science Centers (FSC)<br># Number of Fishery Management and/or Advisory Organizations supported by Science Center | Labs / Field Stations / Facilities   |
|------------------|---|---|--|
| Alaska           | ♦ <b>Alaska RO</b><br>Juneau, AK  | 9 <b>Alaska FSC</b><br>Seattle, WA  | AK   • Anchorage<br>• Baranof Island<br>• Dutch Harbor<br>• Juneau<br>• Kodiak<br>• Pribilof Islands<br>WA   • Seattle<br>OR   • Newport           |
| West Coast       | ♦ <b>West Coast RO</b><br>Seattle, WA   | 5 <b>Northwest FSC</b><br>Seattle, WA   | WA   • Manchester<br>• Pasco<br>• Seattle<br>• Mukiteo   |
|                  |   | 4 <b>Southwest FSC</b><br>La Jolla, CA  | CA   • Arcata<br>• Granite Canyon<br>• La Jolla<br>• Pacific Grove<br>• Piedras<br>• Santa Cruz<br>Antarctica   • King George Isl.<br>• Livingston |
| Pacific Islands  | ♦ <b>Pacific Islands RO</b><br>Honolulu, HI   | 5 <b>Pacific Islands FSC</b><br>Honolulu, HI  | HI   • Honolulu<br>U.S. Territories  <br>• American Samoa<br>• Northern Mariana Islands<br>• Guam  |
| Greater Atlantic | ♦ <b>Greater Atlantic RFO*</b><br>Gloucester, MA<br><br>* Regional Fisheries Office | 6 <b>Northeast FSC</b><br>Woods Hole, MA  | ME   • Orono<br>MA   • Woods Hole<br>RI   • Narragansett<br>CT   • Milford<br>NJ   • Highlands   |
| Southeast        | ♦ <b>Southeast RO</b><br>St. Petersburg, FL   | 6 <b>Southeast FSC</b><br>Miami, FL   | NC   • Beaufort<br>FL   • Panama City<br>• Miami<br>MS   • Pascagoula<br>• Stennis<br>LA   • Lafayette<br>TX   • Galveston                         |

## Fishery Management & Advisory Organizations

\* Advisory (not management) organization.

| Organization   | Supported by NOAA Fisheries Science Center(s)   | Managed Ecosystem   | Managed Stocks  |
|----------------|---|---|---|
| <b>ADFG</b>    | Alaska Dept. of Fish & Game    | Gulf of Alaska & Bering Sea - Sub-Arctic                            | Numerous Alaska coast stocks  |
| <b>CCAMLR</b>  | Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Living Marine Resources   | Antarctic   | Toothfishes, Icefish, & Krill   |
| <b>CCSBT</b>   | Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna   | Southern Hemisphere Oceans  | Southern bluefin tuna   |
| <b>IATTC</b>   | Inter-American Tropical Tuna Commission     | Eastern Pacific Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Tropical                      | Tunas, Billfish, Sharks   |
| <b>IPHC</b>    | Int'l Pacific Halibut Commission   | Pacific Coast - Temperate to Sub-Arctic                             | Pacific halibut   |
| <b>ISCTTS*</b> | Int'l Scientific Committee for Tuna & Tuna-Like Species in the Northern Pacific Ocean    | Northern Pacific Ocean  | Tunas, Billfish, Sharks   |
| <b>NPFC</b>    | Northern Pacific FC    | Northern Pacific Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Sub-Tropical                 | Numerous groundfish, Pelagics, Invertebrates                                      |
| <b>NPFMC</b>   | Northern Pacific FMC   | Gulf of Alaska & Bering Sea - Sub-Arctic                            | Groundfish, Salmon, Crab, Scallops  |
| <b>PFMC</b>    | Pacific FMC                    | California Current  | Salmon, Groundfish, pelagics, HMS   |
| <b>PSC*</b>    | Pacific Salmon Commission      | Pacific Coast, Bays, Rivers, & Estuaries                            | Pacific salmon stocks   |
| <b>PSMFC*</b>  | Pacific States Marine FC    | Pacific Coast, Bays, Rivers, & Estuaries                            | Numerous Pacific coast stocks   |
| <b>PWS</b>     | Pacific Whiting Treaty   | California Current - Temperate                                      | Pacific whiting (Pacific hake)  |
| <b>SPRFMO</b>  | Southern Pacific Regional FMO     | Southern Pacific Ocean  | Jack mackerel, Chub mackerel, Squids  |
| <b>WCPFC</b>   | Western & Central Pacific FC   | Western & Central Pacific Ocean                                     | Tunas, Billfish, Sharks   |
| <b>WPFMC</b>   | Western Pacific FMC    | Insular Pacific Hawaii - Tropical                                   | Bottomfish, Reef fishes, HMS, Invertebrates                                       |
| <b>ASMFC</b>   | Atlantic States Marine FC     | U.S. East Coast, Bays, & Estuaries                                  | Coastal groundfish, Pelagics, Invertebrates, Anadromous fishes                    |
| <b>CFMC</b>    | Caribbean FMC    | Caribbean Sea - Tropical  | Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics                                    |
| <b>GOMFMC</b>  | Gulf of Mexico FMC   | Gulf of Mexico - Tropical/Subtropical                               | Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics                                    |
| <b>GSMFC</b>   | Gulf States Marine FC    | Coastal Gulf of Mexico - Tropical/Subtropical                       | Gulf menhaden, Blue crab, Many commercial/rec. stocks                             |
| <b>ICCAT</b>   | Int'l Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas    | Atlantic Ocean - Sub-Arctic to Tropical                             | Tunas, Billfish, Sharks   |
| <b>MAFMC</b>   | Mid-Atlantic FMC   | Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Mid-Atlantic Bight)               | Groundfish, Clams & quahogs, Pelagic fishes & squids                              |
| <b>NAFO</b>    | Northwest Atlantic FO    | Northwest Atlantic Ocean  | Groundfish, Squid, Shrimp   |
| <b>NASCO</b>   | North Atlantic Salmon Conservation Org.    | Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Georges Bank) - Temperate Climate | Georges Bank groundfish stocks shared by U.S. & Canada                            |
| <b>NEFMC</b>   | New England FMC    | Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (New England)                      | New England groundfish, Sea scallops, Red crab, Atlantic herring, Atlantic salmon |
| <b>SAFMC</b>   | South Atlantic FMC   | Southeast U.S. Continental Shelf                                    | Reef fishes, Invertebrates, Migratory pelagics                                    |
| <b>TMGC</b>    | Transboundary Mgmt. Guidance Committee   | Northeast U.S. Continental Shelf (Georges Bank) - Temperate Climate | Georges Bank groundfish stocks shared by U.S. & Canada                            |

### Science Centers

|   |   |
|---|---|
|  Alaska    |  Northeast       |
|  Northwest |  Southeast       |
|  Southwest |  Pacific Islands |

### Geography

AK - Alaska | CA - California | CT - Connecticut  
 FL - Florida | HI - Hawaii | LA - Louisiana  
 MA - Massachusetts | ME - Maine | MS - Mississippi  
 NC - North Carolina | NJ - New Jersey | NY - New York  
 OR - Oregon | PR - Puerto Rico | RI - Rhode Island  
 TX - Texas | U.S. - United States  
 USVI - U.S. Virgin Islands | WA - Washington

### Shorthand / Acronyms

|       |                                   |       |                          |
|-------|-----------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| Dept. | Department                        | HMS   | Highly Migratory Species |
| FC    | Fisheries Commission              | Int'l | International            |
| FMC   | Fisheries Management Council      | Isl.  | Islands                  |
| FMO   | Fisheries Management Organization | Mgmt. | Management               |
| FO    | Fisheries Organization            | Org.  | Organization             |
|       |                                   | Rec.  | Recreational (fisheries) |

796 Figure 3.1. Summary of NOAA Fisheries' scientific programs that support fisheries management,  
797 including the location of regional offices, science centers and their associated field offices, and the  
798 various management jurisdictions supported.

799 In many cases, funding has supported decades-long survey monitoring programs of groundfish stocks  
800 and their fisheries, thus providing large quantities of information to support data-intensive and  
801 sophisticated approaches for conducting stock assessments. In contrast, many tropical-reef-associated  
802 fishes (e.g., snappers and groupers) that fall under federal jurisdiction have very limited data on which  
803 assessments and management decisions can be based; however, recreational fisheries for some of these  
804 stocks are among the most important fisheries in the country. The Southeast and Pacific Islands centers  
805 are responsible for many of the reef-associated stocks. Some of these stocks are subject to international  
806 harvests of unknown scale, further contributing to assessment and management challenges. Situations  
807 where there is little data for a fish stock may be due to limited ship time and resources, diverse species  
808 and life history patterns, and complex habitats that are not conducive to data collection. These data  
809 gaps substantially limit the types of analyses that can be conducted as well as the degree of certainty  
810 surrounding the resulting scientific advice. Although there is little data for some groundfish stocks and  
811 sufficient data for some tropical species, these species groups provide general "bookends": Most of the  
812 remaining categories of federally managed stocks fall along the range of data availability between these  
813 extremes.

814 Coastal mid-water (pelagic) stocks (e.g., sardines, hakes, mackerels, and squids) are assessed in nearly all  
815 centers, and several centers conduct assessments of anadromous fish that migrate between marine and  
816 freshwater systems, such as Pacific and Atlantic salmon. Stocks within these species groups vary greatly  
817 regarding the amount of data available for assessments. NOAA Fisheries also conducts assessments of  
818 highly migratory species (HMS; e.g., tunas, billfish, and sharks) in collaboration with international  
819 partners, although NOAA Fisheries manages U.S. stocks of Atlantic HMS and contributes to management  
820 of HMS in other oceans. Generally, assessments of these stocks rely heavily on fishery-dependent data,  
821 because scientific surveys that cover the distribution of wide-ranging species are cost-prohibitive.

822 Beyond species groups, other patterns emerge across regions. For instance, commercial catch may  
823 represent a high proportion of landings in some regions (e.g., Alaska, Pacific), whereas recreational  
824 interests dominate other regions (e.g., Southeast). The stakeholder group dynamics and complexity vary  
825 by region, with numerous state partners and diverse fishing interests along the east coast and generally  
826 fewer stakeholder groups along the west coast. In addition, each regional ecosystem has unique  
827 characteristics, although national similarities emerge in this area. For instance, cold-water and  
828 temperate ecosystems are experiencing a higher degree of warming due to climate change, potentially  
829 affecting the distribution and productivity of many valuable stocks (Nye et al., 2009; Pinsky et al., 2013).  
830 Warming in tropical regions has been less severe, but coral reef systems can be highly sensitive to small  
831 temperature fluctuations and ocean acidification, and localized effects on biodiversity have been  
832 observed. Although each stock faces many unique challenges within an assessment context, these  
833 regional similarities indicate that numerous issues rise to the national level. Consequently, a main

834 objective of this document is to provide national guidance and potential solutions that may benefit  
835 assessments of many stocks across regions.

836 General issues facing the NOAA Fisheries stock assessment enterprise include the following:

- 837 • Centers increasingly require a comprehensive prioritization process to guide assessments and  
838 address information gaps. Despite growth in stock assessment capacity, the demand for stock  
839 assessments and scientific advice to guide fisheries management exceeds the capacity to meet  
840 that demand.
- 841 • After samples and data are collected, additional work is needed before they can be incorporated  
842 into assessments. These tasks include quality assurance, processing, and formatting to comply  
843 with assessment model requirements. These steps constitute significant bottlenecks that limit  
844 assessment throughput in many regions, especially where the input data for the assessment  
845 models must be compiled from diverse data sources.
- 846 • Historical stock depletions in U.S. fisheries resulted in many stocks being listed as overfished.  
847 Rebuilding an overfished stock takes time, and while a stock is on a rebuilding plan, frequent  
848 assessments are required. As a result, past actions have created a bottleneck in the assessment  
849 process, increasing the current demand for stock assessments.
- 850 • For certain stocks, the assessment and management process does not meet expectations. For  
851 instance, an increase in stock biomass might not be observed despite harvest reductions, or an  
852 assessment model may exhibit instability (Chapter 5). These issues can impact the credibility of  
853 the science, stakeholder engagement, and overall ability to manage for sustainable fisheries.
- 854 • NOAA Fisheries is responsible for providing scientific advice on numerous stocks for which there  
855 is little data. Although annual catch limits are required for all federally managed stocks, a high  
856 level of uncertainty exists around estimates of sustainable harvest levels when catches  
857 themselves are unknown.
- 858 • Due to their quantitative skills and familiarity with managed stocks, many NOAA assessment  
859 scientists are tasked with analyses to support evaluation of management alternatives, resulting  
860 in less time to devote to assessment research.
- 861 • The historical investment in fisheries and fishery-independent data has generally been lowest in  
862 regions with the highest diversity of fisheries and species. In many cases, the primary data  
863 collection programs began after certain target species were already overfished. Data from these  
864 programs are therefore highly uncertain and often contentious, and extensive investigations are  
865 often requested. As a result, more time, staff, and resources are required to complete  
866 assessments in these regions.

867 NOAA Fisheries; stock assessment enterprise successfully supports federal mandates and provides the  
868 scientific basis on which most U.S. fisheries have achieved sustainability. This science has helped support  
869 millions of jobs and generate hundreds of billions of dollars in economic activity annually. Although  
870 NOAA's current stock assessment enterprise functions well, challenges highlighted in this and

871 subsequent chapters warrant attention to further improve long-term sustainability and opportunity for  
872 U.S. fisheries.

873 To that end, the remaining chapters in this section identify the primary issues facing NOAA Fisheries'  
874 stock assessment enterprise. These chapters describe the current status and challenges associated with  
875 the following specific aspects of the stock assessment process:

- 876 • Data collection (Chapter 4)
- 877 • Assessment modeling (Chapter 5)
- 878 • Quality assurance (Chapter 6)

879 This comprehensive evaluation is necessary for determining the highest priority issues.

#### 880 ***References***

881 Nye, J. A, J. S. Link, J. A. Hare, and W. J. Overholtz. 2009. Changing spatial distribution of fish stocks in  
882 relation to climate and population size on the Northeast United States continental shelf. *Mar.*  
883 *Ecol. Prog. Ser.* 393:111–129. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps08220>

884 Pinsky, M. L., B. Worm, M. J. Fogarty, J. L. Sarmiento, and S. A. Levin. 2013. Marine taxa track local  
885 climate velocities. *Science* 341:1239–1242. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1239352>

## 886 Chapter 4. Data collection to support stock assessments

887

### 888 Chapter highlights:

- 889 • Data collection for stock assessments is conducted in partnership with numerous management  
890 organizations, academic institutions, and stakeholders.
- 891 • Scientific surveys (also called “fishery-independent” surveys) use data collection methods that  
892 are tailored to the habitats and biological features of the species.
- 893 • Data collected in cooperation with commercial, recreational, and other fisheries (called fishery-  
894 dependent data) are used to monitor catch, effort, incidental catch (called “bycatch”), numbers  
895 of fish returned to the sea either dead or alive (called “discards”), and other stock and fishery  
896 dynamics.
- 897 • Fundamental data for stock assessments include abundance, biology, and catch (explained later  
898 in this chapter).
- 899 • Assessments can also be informed and improved using other data sources, such as ecosystem  
900 and socioeconomic data.

901

### 902 4.1. Data types and collection methods

903

904 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments are conducted using a wide variety of data that are collected by  
905 numerous sources, including federal and state agencies; commercial, recreational, and other fisheries;  
906 academic partners; and other stakeholders. All data, regardless of the source, can be considered for  
907 inclusion in stock assessments (see Chapter 5 for information about how data are analyzed). As part of  
908 the stock assessment review process (Chapter 6), all data and their sources are evaluated to ensure that  
909 they are appropriate for an assessment model and were collected using a scientifically sound method.

910

911 Most contemporary stock assessments strive to include three main data types (Mace et al., 2001):

912

- 913 **Abundance**—changes in relative or absolute numbers or biomass over time
- 914 **Biology**—demographics and life history
- 915 **Catch**— fishing effort, bycatch, and discards

916

917 Increasingly, there is an effort to include other data in the stock assessment process: ecosystem data,  
918 such as environmental forcing factors and predator–prey dynamics; and socioeconomic data, such as  
919 market dynamics and human behavior)

920

921 Data for stock assessments are collected according to two primary strategies: fishery-dependent and  
922 fishery-independent. Fishery-dependent data, as the name implies, is collected as part of commercial,  
923 recreational, or subsistence/cultural/tribal fisheries. These data provide information on the landings and

924 bycatch of the fishery as well as the biological make-up of the catch (i.e., age, size, sex). Fishery-  
925 independent data provide information on the abundance, distribution, and demographics of fish stocks  
926 in their natural environments. These data are collected using standardized scientific surveys, which use  
927 consistent methods over space and time to maintain objectivity and obtain an accurate perception of  
928 wild fish stock dynamics. Fishery-independent data can be collected in cooperation with the fishery and  
929 its vessels, but not during normal fishing operations.

930  
931 The remainder of this chapter provides an overview of the specific types of data that are collected for  
932 and used in stock assessments of federally managed species, as well as challenges associated with the  
933 collection and use of those data. This information provides a baseline assessment to help identify data  
934 gaps and potential strategies for improved data collection (covered in detail in Chapter 8). A summary of  
935 the types of data used by NOAA Fisheries to support stock assessments is presented in Table 4.1, which  
936 is categorized by the geographic areas managed by the eight Fishery Management Councils ( refer to Fig.  
937 3.1).

938  
939 Table 4.1. Summary of stock assessment data collection by regional fishery management council, source,  
940 and type of data collected. Fishery-dependent data is categorized into commercial and non-commercial  
941 sources, while fishery-independent data is categorized into extractive and non-extractive sources. Catch  
942 and effort data is typically compiled from all sources, and biological data is obtained from certain  
943 sources, including information on length (L), weight (W), age (A), reproduction (R), and genetics (G). An  
944 "X" indicates the collection of catch information only.

| Summary Table       |   | North Pacific                                       | Pacific   | Western Pacific | Gulf of Mexico | South Atlantic | Caribbean | Mid-Atlantic | New England |         |
|---------------------|---|---|-----------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|---------|
| Fishery Dependent   | Commercial  | Port/Trip/Weighmaster Data                          | L,W,A,R   | L,W             | L,A            | L,A            | L         | L,W,A        | L,W,A       |         |
|                     |   | Observer Data                                       | L,W,A,R,G | L,W,A           | L,W,A,R        | L,W            | L,W       |              | L,W,A       | L,W,A,R |
|                     |   | Market Data   |           |                 | L,W,A,R,G      |                |           |              |             |         |
|                     |   | Vessel Monitoring System                            | X         |                 | X              | X              | X         | X            | X           | X       |
|                     |   | Other (Aerial, Acoustic)                            | X         |                 | X              |                |           |              |             |         |
|                     | Self-Reported (Logbook, Trip Ticket, Cannery Reports, etc.) | X   | X         | L,W             | X              | X              | X         | W            | W           |         |
|                     | Non-Commercial  | Intercept   | W         | L,W             | L,W            | L,W,A,R,G      | L,W,A,R,G |              | L,W         | L,W     |
|                     |   | Observers   |           | L,W             |                |                |           |              | L,W         | L,W     |
|                     |   | Other (Tournament)                                  |           |                 |                | X              | X         | X            |             |         |
|                     |   | Self-Reported (Logbook, Phone or Mail survey, etc.) | X         | X               | X              | X              | X         |              | X           | X       |
| Fishery Independent | Extractive  | Trawl   | L,W,A,R,G | L,W,A,R,G       | X              | L,W,R          |           | L,W,A,R      | L,W,A,R     |         |
|                     |   | Longline  | L,W,A,R,G | L,W,A,R,G       | L,W            | L,W,A,R        | X         |              | L,W,A,R     |         |
|                     |   | Dredge  |           |                 |                |                |           |              | L,W,A,R     | L,W,A,R |
|                     |   | Handline, Rod & Reel                                |           | L,W,A,R,G       | L,W            |                | L,W,A,R   |              |             |         |
|                     |   | Other (Trap, Gillnet)                               | X         |                 |                | L,W,A,R        | X         |              | L,W,A,R     |         |
|                     | Non-extractive  | Acoustic  | L,W,A,R,G | X               | X              |                |           |              | X           | X       |
|                     |   | Camera (stationary)                                 |           |                 | L              | X              |           |              |             |         |
|                     |   | Camera (mobile)                                     | X         | L               | L              |                |           |              | L           | L       |
|                     |   | Other (Aerial, Diver, Mark-Recapture)               | L         |                 | L              | X              | X         | X            |             |         |

945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965

**4.1.1 Catch data**

Catch refers to the removals due to fishing and, in some cases, research of all fish of a given stock (or stock complex. Catch includes the fish brought to shore for sale or consumption (i.e., landed) as well as fish released at sea that are either already dead or subsequently die (i.e., dead discards). Total catch is an important component of all stock assessments because it indicates the scale of fishing mortality imposed on a stock by commercial, recreational, or tribal fishing efforts. Approaches to estimating the different components of catch vary depending on the type of fishery, with landings typically more easily estimated than discards. The two main types of catch data are commercial and recreational (Table 4.1), although subsistence and tribal fisheries can also contribute to total removals for some stocks. NOAA Fisheries' relies on data from commercial fisheries collected through self-reporting by fishermen, permit holders, or fish dealers, and through data collection and observer programs conducted by NOAA Fisheries, state agencies, tribes, and international partners. Through fishermen's logbooks, the commercial sector self-reports certain data related to catch, such as the total amount of a given species caught (typically in units of weight); catch locations (often following regional reporting areas or grids); and information on fishing techniques (e.g., fishing gear and vessel characteristics, and approaches used in fishing operations). Data on fishing techniques (e.g., gear measurements, fishing location, depth, time, and so on) can be used to estimate and standardize fishing effort across various fishing strategies. Tracking landings for many stocks can be relatively straightforward (e.g., a sum across all sales records), while tracking discards requires estimation.

966 An important approach for collecting fishery-dependent data is through the use of fishery observers,  
967 who are deployed on commercial fishing and processing vessels to monitor fishing activities. Fishery  
968 observers are crucial for tracking catch and discards, because they are placed on specific fishing vessels  
969 to record catch and discard rates by species and gear type. Those discard rates are expanded by the  
970 total amount of fishing effort within each gear type to generate total discard estimates. Fishery observer  
971 data are also used to validate self-reported discard rates from the commercial fleets. Studies can be  
972 conducted to determine the survival rate of discarded fish, with dead discards being added to the catch  
973 to determine the total. Observers may also sample the landings and discards to collect biological  
974 information, such as the size and age distribution of the catch.

975  
976 Recreational fisheries can contribute a substantial portion of the total catch of certain stocks when there  
977 are large numbers of recreational fishermen, the recreational sector is allocated a large portion of the  
978 catch, and there are high levels of fishing effort. This is particularly the case in warmer regions of the  
979 U.S. and its territories, such as the southeast where landings from year-round recreational fishing often  
980 exceed commercial landings. The recreational sector is divided into three main subsectors: headboat,  
981 charter vessels, and individual private anglers. Both self-reporting and government programs collect  
982 data from all three subsectors.

983  
984 The Marine Recreational Information Program (MRIP) is the national data collection program for  
985 recreational data (except in Alaska where the Alaska Department of Fish & Game coordinates this  
986 effort). To estimate the amount of recreational fishing effort in a region, MRIP conducts a telephone-  
987 based survey of registered recreational fishermen (although this survey is transitioning to a mail-based  
988 approach). Additionally, in-person shoreside surveys (called "intercept surveys") are conducted to  
989 estimate the catch and effort associated with individual trips. Finally, multiplying total effort estimated  
990 from the phone/mail surveys by the estimated average catch/effort for each trip provides estimates of  
991 the total recreational catch. Similar to the commercial sector, both landed and discarded fish are  
992 considered, with survival rates of the discarded fish applied to determine the total catch. Further  
993 sampling is also conducted to evaluate the biological characteristics of the fish caught in recreational  
994 fisheries.

995  
996 When programs are in place, subsistence, cultural, and tribal data are incorporated through either  
997 standard reporting requirements or through specialized data collection systems. The amount of fish  
998 caught in this sector is often small compared with the commercial and recreational sectors. However,  
999 accounting for all catch is important to ensure accuracy in stock assessments. For some stocks, the  
1000 subsistence, cultural, and tribal sectors are not sufficiently monitored; in these cases, the data are not  
1001 used in assessments.

1002  
1003 **4.1.2 Abundance data**

1004 Data on stock abundance over time are important for evaluating a stock's response to fishing and effects  
1005 due to other factors. Thus, abundance data directly influences estimates of stock productivity. With the

1006 exception of stocks for which little data are available (called “data-limited” stocks), abundance data are  
1007 used in nearly all stock assessments. Abundance data may be relative (e.g., percentage changes in stock  
1008 size over time) or absolute (total) abundance (e.g., measures of stock size in terms of total numbers or  
1009 weight). When available, absolute abundance estimates are preferred, mainly because they provide a  
1010 solid foundation for stock assessment analyses by anchoring the assessment model at a scale that  
1011 reflects actual stock biomass. Trends in relative abundance are useful for characterizing fishing effects.  
1012 However, estimating the actual scale of the stock can be challenging when using relative abundance,  
1013 which can be quantified using numbers of fish as well as weight. Unfortunately, data on absolute  
1014 abundance is uncommon because the approach used for calculating it requires information that is  
1015 difficult to obtain (e.g., a stock’s total habitat volume, proportion of a stock available to sampling gear,  
1016 and the efficiency with which a survey samples the available stock). Despite these challenges, there are  
1017 examples of surveys that provide absolute abundance estimates, including bottom trawl surveys for  
1018 certain flatfish stocks in the Bering Sea, the yelloweye rockfish survey off southeast Alaska that uses  
1019 observations from a remotely operated vehicle, and the sea scallop survey off New England that uses a  
1020 towed camera system (HabCam).

1021  
1022 Ideally, abundance trends or indices of relative abundance are obtained from scientific surveys.  
1023 However, when survey observations are unavailable, fishery-dependent sources can be used. In a  
1024 fishery-dependent survey, catch rates such as annual catch per unit of effort (CPUE) serve as  
1025 substitutions for relative abundance. For example, catch rates in southeastern headboat fisheries<sup>17</sup> are  
1026 used in assessments for multiple reef fish species managed by the South Atlantic Fishery Management  
1027 Council (SAFMC) and Gulf of Mexico Fishery Management Council (GOMFMC). Also, because it is cost-  
1028 prohibitive to conduct scientific surveys over the distribution of most highly migratory species,  
1029 assessments of these stocks rely almost exclusively on fishery-dependent data. Although fishery-  
1030 dependent data tends to be readily available as part of routine fishery monitoring, extra caution is  
1031 needed when using these data because they are influenced by changes in fishing practices and therefore  
1032 may not be objective. To remove potential biases, fishery-dependent CPUE trends are typically  
1033 corrected or “standardized” (Maunder and Punt, 2003) before they are used as substitutes for stock  
1034 abundance in an assessment.

1035  
1036 Abundance trends generated from fishery-independent surveys are preferable to those from fishery-  
1037 dependent sources. Fishery-independent surveys are standardized, using consistent methods over time  
1038 and space that optimally cover the range of the stock, including areas of lower abundance. These  
1039 surveys can be designed such that they balance sampling effort in accordance with regional stock  
1040 density (e.g., via adaptive, data-guided approaches that distribute sampling by depth, longitude,  
1041 latitude, and/or habitat type). As a result, changes over time in measures of stock abundance or density  
1042 from well-designed scientific surveys are assumed to be proportional to changes in stock size.

---

<sup>17</sup> <http://www.sefsc.noaa.gov/labs/beaufort/sustainable/headboat/>

1043 Nevertheless, scientific surveys do not provide a perfect depiction of stock dynamics: They often target  
1044 multiple species and therefore may not follow a design that is ideal for certain species; they may have  
1045 fixed designs that do not adapt to changing ecosystems; and they may be affected by changing  
1046 priorities, resources, or unforeseen events (e.g., weather and mechanical delays). As a result, to  
1047 maximize available resources and provide high-quality abundance data, NOAA Fisheries uses multiple  
1048 fishery-independent survey techniques described in Table 4.1.

1049

#### 1050 **4.1.3 Biological data**

1051

1052 Samples of fish collected to support stock assessments can provide information on age, length, weight,  
1053 sex, reproduction (e.g., maturity and fertility or fecundity), genetic information, and natural mortality  
1054 (i.e., not caused by fishing). Age and length data are used mainly to characterize growth, as well as the  
1055 age and size distributions of the assessed stock (including the catch). Weight, sex, and reproductive data  
1056 are used to calculate reproductive potential, which may include aspects of egg production and/or total  
1057 weight of mature fish (i.e., fish that can breed). Genetic data typically are not used directly in stock  
1058 assessments, but can be used to determine stock structure (i.e., the spatial boundaries of a stock) and  
1059 evaluate whether the definition for a managed stock is consistent with the biological stock. Finally,  
1060 natural mortality, which is difficult to estimate, can be informed by scientific research, such as tag-and-  
1061 recapture studies. These studies can be done in advance to provide an estimate of natural mortality, or  
1062 the data from the studies can be incorporated into a stock assessment model to help scientists estimate  
1063 natural mortality within the assessment. In fact, for most of the biological information listed above, the  
1064 samples collected require substantial processing and analysis before these data can be analyzed in a  
1065 stock assessment. This step can actually be one of the major bottlenecks in the assessment process.

1066

1067 Fish samples are collected from both fishery-dependent and -independent sources (see Table 4.1).  
1068 Samples from fishery-dependent sources are primarily collected by port samplers (intercept surveys at  
1069 fishing ports) and at-sea observers. Age, length, and weight are the most common information collected  
1070 from both fishery-dependent and -independent sources, with reproductive samples, genetic analyses,  
1071 and natural mortality studies occurring less frequently.

1072

1073 It is relatively straightforward to measure a fish's size (length and weight), and these measurements can  
1074 be taken at sea or wherever sampling is conducted (e.g., ports). There are multiple approaches to  
1075 determining a fish's age, each of which requires substantial processing time in a laboratory. Most  
1076 methods involve counting yearly rings found by examining hard parts extracted from fish, such as bones  
1077 in the inner ear (otoliths) or, less commonly, fin spines, vertebrae, scales, or other structures.

1078

1079 Reproductive data can be collected from a visual examination, but there is also a need for microscopic  
1080 tissue analyses to obtain detailed information on fertility and maturity. Genetic samples are collected  
1081 mainly for research studies on fish stock structure than as routine samples collected for stock  
1082 assessments. However, genetic studies occur periodically to determine whether management stocks are

1083 appropriately defined and whether data are being collected and analyzed accordingly (e.g., whether  
1084 data from separate areas should be analyzed separately or in combination).

1085  
1086 Similarly, natural mortality rates are often assumed in stock assessments rather than being influenced or  
1087 estimated using assessment data. Thus, research studies that estimate natural mortality of managed  
1088 stocks are another important activity that helps structure an assessment, but may only need to be  
1089 conducted periodically rather than for every assessment. Within stock assessments, natural mortality is  
1090 a simple but important parameter that captures many complex ecological processes that affect survival,  
1091 such as predator–prey, disease, toxins, habitat, and other dynamics (except fishing). In fact, all biological  
1092 parameters referenced here are affected by ecological processes. As a result, a strong connection exists  
1093 between the collection and use of biological data and ecosystem data. In addition, there is a strong need  
1094 to conduct research to better understand these relationships, particularly in ecosystems experiencing  
1095 rapid change.

1096  
1097 **4.1.4. Ecosystem and socioeconomic data**

1098  
1099 Not only are there connections between stock biology, productivity, and ecological processes, but stock  
1100 abundance data, and even fishery data, are affected by ecosystem and socioeconomic dynamics. For  
1101 instance, the proportion of a stock sampled by a survey may be affected by environmental conditions.  
1102 Similarly, the location and effectiveness of fishing may be influenced by changing ecosystems, market  
1103 dynamics, and fishing strategies. Thus, as we continue to improve our understanding of the connections  
1104 between fish, fisheries, and their ecosystems, a clear need emerges to improve assessments by  
1105 expanding their scope to incorporate important ecosystem and socioeconomic connections. Our  
1106 understanding of these connections is furthered through direct experience and studies that mimic actual  
1107 conditions, both of which are based on observations (data) from marine ecosystems and communities.  
1108 Although these environments are complex, dynamic, and often difficult to define, substantial progress  
1109 has been made in recent decades to understand and describe the marine ecosystems that support  
1110 federal fisheries. Nevertheless, significant work still needs to be done to fully characterize these  
1111 ecosystems and communities and how they change over time; the data demand required to accomplish  
1112 this work is large. Although additional data and research are needed to obtain a more complete  
1113 understanding of how ecosystem and socioeconomic drivers affect fish and fisheries, the stock  
1114 assessment process is flexible enough to adapt to include new features and data as they become  
1115 available. In fact, certain stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries already routinely incorporate  
1116 ecosystem information (Chapter 5).

1117  
1118 Because there is an increasing need and desire to include additional drivers in stock assessments, the  
1119 necessary data are collected to both support routine use in existing assessments and to conduct  
1120 research that expands overall knowledge and improves assessments in the future. The primary  
1121 ecosystem data being collected (and projected) include diet information to capture predator–prey  
1122 dynamics, and physical and chemical ecosystem properties such as temperature, salinity, oxygen

1123 concentration, pH, and seafloor structure. In many cases, existing surveys and research cruises have  
1124 been expanded to include ecosystem data collection, thereby maximizing data collection opportunities.  
1125 In other cases, cruises dedicated to ecosystem monitoring are conducted to collect key information. A  
1126 wide range of data are being collected as part of the Global Ocean Observing System, both by NOAA and  
1127 external partners, and these data can serve as key variables in stock assessments. In fact, the  
1128 combination of ocean observation systems with survey designs will become increasingly important to  
1129 better understand ecosystem and stock dynamics. Another source of ecosystem information that can be  
1130 used in stock assessments is an ecosystem model that integrates data and draws conclusions from those  
1131 observations to estimate ecosystem-level dynamics. Actually, aspects of ecosystem-level models are  
1132 often constructed using the results from analyses of single stock dynamics (e.g., stock assessments).  
1133 Therefore, a two-way connection between stock assessment and ecosystem modeling is occurring and is  
1134 necessary to develop the science that supports fisheries management.

1135

#### 1136 **4.2.0. Strengths and challenges**

1137

1138 Data collection for U.S. fish stock assessments has evolved into a far-reaching partnership that collects a  
1139 high volume of a wide variety of data. Formal programs exist for collecting, processing, and preparing  
1140 these data for analysis in stock assessment models. The use of these data in stock assessments is  
1141 evaluated in a public forum (see Chapter 6) where all data, including those collected by stakeholders,  
1142 are considered for inclusion in assessment models. Thus, the overall data collection process for stock  
1143 assessments is sophisticated, transparent, and effective. However, several challenges remain that  
1144 require attention:

1145

- 1146 • **It can be difficult to obtain accurate and timely catch data.**

1147 The accuracy and uncertainty surrounding catch and effort data varies considerably from stock  
1148 to stock. Assessment models analyze historical catches to understand the impacts of fishing over  
1149 time, and for stocks with fisheries that have been monitored since their beginning, catch  
1150 histories may be fairly accurate. However, catch monitoring was commonly incomplete or  
1151 nonexistent during a fishery's early years. Where historical data are lacking, reconstructions of  
1152 catch time series can allow estimation of the full development of some fisheries, especially on  
1153 the west coast, but reconstructions are difficult where fishing effort has been high for centuries.  
1154 Even today, challenges exist in collecting accurate catch information. Monitoring of stocks that  
1155 are harvested internationally can be hindered by jurisdictional issues. In addition, low observer  
1156 coverage and lack of knowledge surrounding release mortality in some fisheries create  
1157 challenges for characterizing bycatch and whether discarded fish survived. Fishery observer data  
1158 are expensive to collect, but need to be increased in some regions of the country (e.g., observer  
1159 coverage is approximately 2% for some fisheries in the southeast region). Recreational,  
1160 subsistence, and artisanal fisheries are difficult to monitor because they are dispersed and have  
1161 limited resources for reporting their catches (Cummings et al., 2015). Further, self-reported data  
1162 from fisheries can contain errors, both unintentional and intentional, that require improvements

1163 in the data validation programs and quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) systems.

1164

1165 Most stock assessment models treat catch information with a high degree of confidence, and  
1166 inaccurate catch histories add uncertainty and bias to stock assessments. For fisheries with  
1167 mandatory catch reporting that dates to the start of the fishery, it may be safe to assume that  
1168 catch histories are fairly accurate. However, there are many instances where uncertainty  
1169 surrounds catch estimates, so every effort is made to estimate the full extent of fishery  
1170 removals. Where there is substantial uncertainty surrounding catch histories, assessment  
1171 models may need enhanced functionality to account for this uncertainty.

1172

1173 One of the largest bottlenecks for assessments in almost every region of the country is related  
1174 to the processing and delivery of fishery data to assessment modelers. These challenges extend  
1175 the time required to conduct stock assessments, and may result in large gaps between the final  
1176 year of data used in the assessment and when the assessment is completed. Increased  
1177 electronic reporting by commercial fisheries could help create more efficient data access and  
1178 potentially improve QA/QC. Similarly, the development of automated tools, such as video-based  
1179 counting of discards by species, could improve the availability and accuracy of data in certain  
1180 situations.

1181

1182 • **Abundance data is expensive to collect and challenging to extract from fishery catch rates.**

1183 Although fishery-independent surveys are preferred over fishery-dependent data sources for  
1184 providing estimates of stock abundance, challenges also exist in the implementation and use of  
1185 fishery-independent surveys. First, scientific surveys are often relatively expensive to conduct  
1186 and require significant ship time, with vessel days typically ranging from approximately \$2,500  
1187 per day for smaller, contracted vessels to more than \$15-30,000 per day for larger NOAA ships.  
1188 In addition to vessel costs, resources are also needed for equipment and supplies, and field,  
1189 laboratory, and analytical personnel. As a result, annual costs for surveys often range from  
1190 hundreds of thousands to millions of dollars per year when all costs are considered. Second, the  
1191 efficiency of gear types used in fishery-independent surveys may vary with the size or age of  
1192 specimens being caught (e.g., older and larger fish may be better at avoiding capture by trawls  
1193 due to increased swimming ability or speed with size), or by habitat type (e.g., trawls may be  
1194 more likely to collect fish over unstructured versus structured habitat). These differences in gear  
1195 effectiveness, unless known and corrected for, increase the uncertainty around abundance  
1196 estimates. Thus, to maximize the usefulness of fishery-independent data, gear-specific  
1197 efficiencies must be assessed—potentially a time-consuming and costly undertaking. Third,  
1198 surveys can be designed to make the most of information collected on specific species (e.g.,  
1199 dredge surveys for scallops, acoustic surveys for midwater schooling fish); however, most  
1200 surveys capitalize on the opportunity to collect information on a group of species. This multi-  
1201 species sampling approach means that data are collected on many more species than under a  
1202 single-species approach, thereby allowing many more stock assessments to be conducted with

1203 minimal increases in resources. However, additional considerations are associated with multi-  
1204 species surveys. For instance, the stocks collected may have different distributions, habitat  
1205 preferences, daytime patterns, and/or availability to fishing gear. For such surveys, establishing  
1206 a survey design that reduces uncertainty surrounding abundance estimates for certain target  
1207 species may increase the uncertainty surrounding the abundance of other species. In other  
1208 words, because distributions, habitat use patterns, and behaviors vary by species, it is  
1209 impossible to design surveys that are ideal for all species sampled. Thus, choices will have to be  
1210 made based on species-specific management importance, cost, and logistical considerations.

1211  
1212 The primary challenge related to the use of fishery-dependent data for generating estimates of  
1213 relative stock abundance is that multiple factors unrelated to stock abundance can affect fishery  
1214 catch rates. For instance, changing management actions may alter catch rates due to varying  
1215 harvest quotas, size restrictions, temporal and spatial management, and so on. Catch rates are  
1216 also affected by fishery-driven changes in practices, such as changes in market prices, fuel  
1217 prices, and so on; improvements in fishing strategies and techniques, such as new technologies  
1218 that improve catch efficiency; and target species preferences, such as certain stocks may be  
1219 targeted after quotas for other stocks are met. Additionally, changes in the completeness of  
1220 reporting (e.g., enforcement and compliance with reporting requirements) will affect the data  
1221 available on catch rates. Issues related to estimating abundance trends from fishery-dependent  
1222 data require considerable attention, because fisheries can adapt their practices to maintain  
1223 catch rates, and therefore profits, when stocks decline (e.g., if stock density declines in certain  
1224 areas, fishing can be redirected to higher-density areas to maintain efficiency).

- 1225  
1226 • **Research is needed to improve biological data.**  
1227 Because the types of biological data collected for stock assessments are diverse, so are the  
1228 challenges associated with those data. Optimally, all biological data used in stock assessments  
1229 should be collected to represent managed stocks as a whole. When only a portion of a stock's  
1230 spatial distribution (or ages, sizes, or sexes) are sampled, the biological data must be interpreted  
1231 with caution because it may not represent the entire stock. To avoid biased biological data, it is  
1232 important to sample the entire stock as much as possible, and to research sampling strategies  
1233 and efficiencies to understand which portions of the stock are represented by the data. In some  
1234 cases, stock distributions extend across jurisdictional—state, federal, and international—  
1235 boundaries, creating sampling and management challenges. However, if a managed stock is not  
1236 consistent with a biological stock, then estimates of productivity, stock status, and harvest  
1237 recommendations may be inaccurate.

1238  
1239 When collecting biological data, it is important to understand the minimum number of samples  
1240 needed to sufficiently estimate life history factors. For many stocks, studies to address sampling  
1241 intensity have not been conducted, but this research is important for determining and  
1242 prioritizing resources needed for data collection in stock assessments. There are potentially

1243 numerous cases of both under- and over-sampling of biological data, affecting not just the time  
1244 and resources dedicated to collect the data, but also the time and resources assigned to  
1245 processing the samples. In fact, due to limited capacity and substantial processing requirements,  
1246 biological sample processing (e.g., counting age rings) is a primary bottleneck in the stock  
1247 assessment process.

1248  
1249 For aging analyses, species-specific studies are necessary to validate assigned ages; however,  
1250 these studies are lacking for many managed stocks. Even when validation studies have occurred,  
1251 the determination of an individual fish's age can be challenging, as is often the case for older  
1252 individuals of long-lived species. As such, fish are typically aged by multiple analysts with a goal  
1253 of reaching high levels (e.g., greater than 90% agreement) among analysts before data are  
1254 judged useful for assessments (Campana, 2001).

1255  
1256 For reproductive data, there are multiple areas where additional research could improve stock  
1257 assessments. For example, more detailed understanding of reproductive capacity by size and  
1258 age could result in more accurate assessment models and therefore biological reference points.  
1259 Additionally, studies are needed to better understand the timing and duration of spawning  
1260 seasons, as well as spawning frequency, particularly for stocks with individuals that spawn  
1261 multiple times during a season, and stocks with individuals that do not spawn each season  
1262 (Secor, 2008; Rideout and Tomkiewicz, 2011; Fitzhugh et al., 2012). Numerous species,  
1263 especially tropical reef fishes, have both male and female reproductive organs (called  
1264 "hermaphroditic"), often reaching maturity as one sex and then transitioning to the other. These  
1265 species pose unique challenges to modeling reproductive dynamics, and more studies are  
1266 needed to develop assessment methods and better understand ratios of males to females in the  
1267 stock and how those ratios relate to productivity (Shepherd et al., 2013).

1268  
1269 Natural mortality is a critical, although understudied, component of stock assessments. In fact,  
1270 many assessments are conducted without any direct measures of natural mortality. Rather,  
1271 natural mortality rates often emerge from using data and relationships with other life history  
1272 data, other species, or without any supporting information. Thus, there is a clear need for more  
1273 tagging studies and tag-and-recapture data to improve natural mortality estimates, as well as a  
1274 link to predation and other sources of known, measurable mortality.

1275  
1276 • **More ecosystem and socioeconomic data and research are needed.**  
1277 Ultimately, to expand the scope of stock assessments, it is not enough that additional data are  
1278 available. Scientists also need to understand more fully how fish stocks and fishery dynamics are  
1279 affected by ecosystem and socioeconomic factors. For instance, because biological processes  
1280 combine a number of ecosystem processes, more research on predator-prey, disease, toxins,  
1281 and habitat dynamics would improve understanding of factors that affect stock productivity.  
1282 Similarly, research into human and market dynamics is valuable to help understand and predict

1283 fisheries. Even without including ecosystem or socioeconomic data, many assessments already  
1284 account for change caused by these drivers, such as through variability in weight by age or  
1285 changing fishing practices (e.g., selectivity patterns). However, further research will help  
1286 improve an understanding of the key drivers to improve assessments and the resulting advice.  
1287 Improving prediction skills is particularly important in the context of climate change, because a  
1288 stock's historical responses to fishing, which are evaluated in an assessment, may not reflect  
1289 future responses.

1290  
1291 To expand assessments to be more holistic, researchers need to increase their collection of  
1292 ecosystem and socioeconomic data. Although beneficial partnerships are in place, and many  
1293 existing data collection efforts are being leveraged to collect these additional data, there simply  
1294 is not enough data to fully characterize complex and multifaceted ecosystems and communities.  
1295 Thus, additional data collection and research efforts are needed. However, the information  
1296 currently available can be used and is being used in assessments now. With innovative science  
1297 (Chapter 9) and strategic prioritization (Chapter 10), ecosystem and socioeconomic data can be  
1298 incorporated where most needed.

1299

### 1300 ***References***

1301

1302 Behrenfeld, M. J., and P. G. Falkowski. 1997. Photosynthetic rates derived from satellite-based  
1303 chlorophyll concentration. *Limnol. Oceanogr.* 42:1–20. <https://doi.org/10.4319/lo.1997.42.1.0001>

1304

1305 Campana, S. E. 2001. Accuracy, precision and quality control in age determination, including a review of  
1306 the use and abuse of age validation methods. *J. Fish Biol.* 59:197–242. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1095-  
1307 8649.2001.tb00127.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1095-8649.2001.tb00127.x)

1308

1309 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, W. Harford, W. L. Michaels, and A. Acosta. 2015. Report of a GCFI  
1310 workshop: strategies for improving fishery-dependent data for use in data-limited stock assessments in  
1311 the wider Caribbean region. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC-681, 25 p.

1312 <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5BK19BN>

1313

1314 Erisman, B. E., L. G. Allen, J. T. Claisse, D. J. Pondella II, E. F. Miller, and J. H. Murray. 2011. The illusion of  
1315 plenty: hyperstability masks collapses in two recreational fisheries that target fish spawning  
1316 aggregations. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 68:1705–1716. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f2011-090>

1317

1318 Fitzhugh, G. R., K. W. Shertzer, G. T. Kellison and D. M. Wyanski. 2012. Review of size- and age-  
1319 dependence in batch spawning: implications for stock assessment of fish species exhibiting  
1320 indeterminate fecundity. *Fish. Bull.* 110:413–425.

1321

1322 Hilborn, R. and C. J. Walters, eds. 1992. Quantitative fisheries stock assessment: choice, dynamics and

- 1323 uncertainty, 570 p. Chapman and Hall, NY.  
1324  
1325 Hill, K. T., P. R. Crone, D. A. Demer, J. Zwolinski, E. Dorval, and B. J. Macewicz. Assessment of the Pacific  
1326 sardine resource in 2014 for U.S.A. management in 2014–2015. NOAA Tech. Memo. NOAA-TM-NMFS-  
1327 SWFSC-531, 125 p.  
1328  
1329 Ianelli, J. N., A. B. Hollowed, A. C. Haynie, F. J. Mueter, and N. A. Bond. 2011. Evaluating management  
1330 strategies for eastern Bering Sea walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in a changing environment.  
1331 ICES J. Mar. Sci. 68:1297–1304. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr010>  
1332  
1333 Karnauskas, M., C. B. Paris, G. Zapfe, A. Gruss, J. F. Walter, and M. J. Schirripa. 2013. Use of the  
1334 Connectivity Modeling System to estimate movements of gag grouper (*Mycteroperca microlepis*)  
1335 recruits in the northern Gulf of Mexico. SEDAR33-DW18, 10 p.  
1336  
1337 Karnauskas, M., J. F. Walter III, and C. B. Paris. 2013. Use of the Connectivity Modeling System to  
1338 estimate movements of red snapper (*Lutjanus campechanus*) recruits in the northern Gulf of Mexico.  
1339 SEDAR31-AW10, 17 p.  
1340  
1341 Link, J. S., A. Bundy, W. J. Overholtz, N. Shackell, J. Manderson, D. Duplisea, J. Hare, M. Koen-Alonso, and  
1342 K. D. Friedland. 2011. Ecosystem-based fisheries management in the Northwest Atlantic. Fish Fish.  
1343 12:152–170. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2011.00411.x>  
1344  
1345 Mace, P. M., N. W. Bartoo, A. B. Hollowed, P. Kleiber, R. D. Methot, S. A. Murawski, J. E. Powers, and G.  
1346 P. Scott. 2001. Marine fisheries Stock Assessment Improvement Plan: report of the National Marine  
1347 Fisheries Service National Task Force for improving fish stock assessments. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-  
1348 F/SPO-56, 75 p.  
1349  
1350 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent  
1351 approaches. Fish. Res. 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>  
1352  
1353 Pinsky, M. L., B. Worm, M. J. Fogarty, J. L. Sarmiento, and S. A. Levin. 2013. Marine taxa track local  
1354 climate velocities. Science 341:1239–1242. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1239352>  
1355  
1356 Polovina, J. J., J. P. Dunne, P. A. Woodworth, and E. A. Howell. 2011. Projected expansion of the  
1357 subtropical biome and contraction of the temperate and equatorial upwelling biomes in the North  
1358 Pacific under global warming. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 68:986–995. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsq198>  
1359  
1360 Polovina, J. J., and E. A. Howell. 2005. Ecosystem indicators derived from satellite remotely sensed  
1361 oceanographic data for the North Pacific. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 62:319–327.  
1362 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.07.031>

1363  
1364 Rideout, R. M., and J. Tomkiewicz. 2011. Skipped spawning in fishes: more common than you  
1365 might think. *Mar. Coast. Fish.* 3:176–189. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19425120.2011.556943>  
1366  
1367 58th Northeast regional stock assessment workshop (58th SAW) assessment report. 2014. NFSC ref. doc.  
1368 14-04, part A, butterflyfish stock assessment for 2014, 335 P.  
1369  
1370 Secor, D. H. 2008. Influence of skipped spawning and misspecified reproductive schedules on biological  
1371 reference points in sustainable fisheries. *Trans. Amer. Fish. Soc.* 137:782–789.  
1372 <https://doi.org/10.1577/T07-105.1>  
1373  
1374 Shepherd, G. R., K. Shertzer, J. Coakley, and M. Caldwell, eds. 2013. Modeling protogynous  
1375 hermaphrodite fishes workshop; Raleigh, NC, 29–30 August, 33 p. [Available from Mid-Atlantic Fishery  
1376 Management Council, 800 North State Street, Suite 201, Dover, DE 19901 or at  
1377 <http://www.mafmc.org/workshop/2012/prot-herm-workshop.>]  
1378  
1379 Wilderbuer, T. K., D. G. Nichol, and J. Ianelli. 2013. North Pacific stock assessment and fishery evaluation  
1380 reports 4: assessment of the yellowfin sole stock in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands, 90 p. [Available  
1381 at <http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/Docs/2013/BSAlyfin.pdf>].  
1382  
1383

## 1384 Chapter 5. Analytical tools

### 1385 Chapter highlights

- 1386 • Stock assessment models are specifically designed to produce results needed by fishery managers.
- 1387 • A range of models is available to suit the diversity in available data for each stock.
- 1388 • Models that use limited data produce management advice by making strong assumptions; models
- 1389 that use more types of data can estimate the effects of more factors on a given fish population.
- 1390 • Characterizing the uncertainty in model outputs is important for evaluating the risk associated
- 1391 with various management strategies.

### 1392 5.1. Introduction

1393 This chapter provides an overview of the analytical tools used in NOAA's fish stock assessments. Many of  
1394 these tools are highly technical, and therefore, this information is intended for those already familiar  
1395 with these methods, or for those interested in an introduction to the mechanics of stock assessment  
1396 modeling. The analytical work conducted by stock assessment scientists is designed to translate data  
1397 from fisheries, surveys, and biological studies to characterize the status of a fish stock and to provide  
1398 catch forecasts needed by fishery managers. These analyses consist of three principal stages:

- 1399 1. Data preparation
- 1400 2. Modeling and forecasting of fishery and population dynamics
- 1401 3. Risk analysis and decision support

1402 In stage one, the many samples collected each year from fisheries and surveys need to be processed and  
1403 summarized by a few values (e.g., the age composition of the catch for a given year) that are input to a  
1404 stock assessment model. During the second stage, development, calibration, application, and  
1405 forecasting of these models are major activities for the stock assessment programs. Then, in the third  
1406 stage, the uncertainty surrounding stock assessment results is explored to calculate tradeoffs and risks  
1407 and communicate them to fishery managers and the affected public. In addition to these three stages of  
1408 assessment analyses, which are described in more detail in this chapter, stock assessment modelers also  
1409 conduct a wide range of research and perform management support activities that use their analytical  
1410 skills. These activities range from investigations of ecosystem and habitat factors affecting fish stock  
1411 dynamics, to analyzing bycatch patterns in fisheries. Opportunities to conduct research allow stock  
1412 assessment scientists to remain creative, innovative, and at the forefront of stock assessment science.  
1413 The distinction between stock assessments and general scientific research and investigations into fish  
1414 population dynamics is that the results of stock assessment analyses are tailored for delivery to fishery  
1415 managers. Thus, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment scientists conduct world-class fisheries research  
1416 while also participating in operational science (i.e., stock assessments) that deliver quality scientific  
1417 advice to fishery managers.

## 1418 **5.2. Preparing stock assessment input data**

1419 As described in Chapter 4, a variety of data (i.e., samples) are collected to support stock assessments.  
1420 However, the samples collected by these various programs may not be available as input into stock  
1421 assessment models until they have been processed. This processing includes laboratory analysis of  
1422 samples and organizing the data so they are appropriate for use in assessment models. For example,  
1423 catch information recorded from thousands of fishing trips is combined into a measure of total (usually  
1424 annual) catch by each fleet. Similarly, survey observations from hundreds of locations are totaled into a  
1425 measure of stock abundance, again usually annual, throughout the range of the survey. This  
1426 combination typically involves sophisticated statistical models often designed and implemented by stock  
1427 assessment scientists (see review by Maunder and Punt, 2004).

1428 Processing data for generating catch-age compositions (and catch-length compositions) requires  
1429 analytical thoroughness and an incorporation of the sampling process (Kimura, 1989; Dorn, 1992). The  
1430 fishery data on catch and its size and age composition can come from many sources including NOAA,  
1431 commission or state-specific landings receipts, NOAA fishery observer programs, state-specific biological  
1432 sampling, diverse recreational fishery sectors, and so on. Merging these raw data into statistically sound  
1433 estimates of fleet-specific catch statistics can be difficult and time-consuming for stock assessment  
1434 scientists and data analysts. The need to improve the efficiency of this process so that data are readily  
1435 (and publicly) available for assessments was a major finding of NOAA's stock assessment program  
1436 reviews in 2013<sup>18</sup>. In certain scenarios, standardized, immediately usable data systems could help relieve  
1437 this drain on the assessment process and potentially result in more timely assessments for more stocks.  
1438 However, frequent changes in fishery management and fishermen's behavior hinder the development of  
1439 automated collection systems for fishery data.

1440 Another major effort is developing methods to create a measure of stock abundance from raw fishery  
1441 logbook or survey sample data. Here, statistical methods such as generalized linear models have been  
1442 useful (Maunder and Punt, 2004), and the next wave of innovation in this area may be fully geostatistical  
1443 methods (Thorson et al., 2015). Pre-processing data before using it in models also requires consideration  
1444 of the appropriate observation uncertainties (Francis, 2011). Finally, statistical methods are used for  
1445 estimating or reconstructing historical catches. The reliability of these methods can vary over time and  
1446 by region (e.g., if the catch accounting method involves data collections at different spatial scales,  
1447 assumptions about distributing can be critical).

## 1448 **5.3. Stock Assessment Models**

### 1449 **5.3.1. Principles**

1450 Population dynamics models produce the main stock assessment results. Information fed into these  
1451 models is obtained from the pre-processing models discussed earlier. Population dynamics models are

---

<sup>18</sup> <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/program-review-reports/index>

1452 based on realistic, but simplified, representations of the factors affecting the productivity and mortality  
1453 of fish stocks. In addition, these models are designed to produce estimates of current, historical, and  
1454 future fish abundance and fishing mortality.

1455 Population dynamics models are standardized using the time series of abundance, biological, and catch  
1456 data. The quantity and quality of these data and the amount of variation (contrast) they show over time  
1457 influences the types of models that are used and how well they can be expected to perform (Maunder  
1458 and Piner, 2014). Each stock provides unique data for an assessment, including the research conducted  
1459 to support assumptions underlying stock and fishery dynamics. Thus, the choice of stock assessment  
1460 model and model configuration within the assessment framework is governed by a stock-specific,  
1461 scientific, decision-making process that attempts to identify the most appropriate analytical approach.  
1462 Implementing this process requires strong technical expertise and is a fundamental role of the stock  
1463 assessment analyst. Numerous choices are available to assessment analysts, and Table 5.1 provides a  
1464 general summary of the range of options.

1465 Most stock assessment analyses are statistically based, so the general conceptual approach to running  
1466 or “fitting” an assessment model follows basic statistical modeling practices. This process involves the  
1467 following general steps:

- 1468 1. Specifying mathematical equations (models) that are assumed to represent stock and fishery  
1469 dynamics
- 1470 2. Inputting relevant data pertaining to stock and fishery dynamics
- 1471 3. Applying statistical methods that calibrate the mathematical models by comparing the  
1472 processes defined by the equations to the patterns observed in the data.

1473 The specific details about each step of the modeling process vary with the amount and type of data  
1474 available for an assessment (Figure 5.1). For instance, most data-rich assessments are age (or length)  
1475 based, and therefore provide a more detailed evaluation of the effects of fishing and other factors on  
1476 the stock. To achieve this level of detail, the mathematical models need to be created to track cohorts  
1477 (or length classes) over time, which results in a relatively large number of model parameters that need  
1478 to be estimated (informed by data) or specified (i.e., assumed). This type of configuration requires age-  
1479 (or length-) specific data, as well as relatively complex statistical methods capable of calibrating models  
1480 with many parameters. One benefit of a more detailed model is that generally, there are fewer strong  
1481 assumptions about stock dynamics required. With data-moderate assessments, there are typically  
1482 observations of total catch as well as changes in abundance, but the data are aggregated across ages  
1483 (sizes), so these assessments inherently assume that the dynamics apply to all ages and sizes of  
1484 individuals in the stock equally. However, the benefits of a simple model include easier understanding,  
1485 generally simpler statistical methods which can result in fewer complications during application (i.e.,  
1486 models that are easier fit), and often a straightforward calculation of key results. For instance, solutions  
1487 for maximum sustainable yield (MSY) reference points which form the basis for stock status  
1488 determinations and setting sustainable catch limits can be directly calculated with biomass dynamics

1489 models (see Section 5.3.2). With data-rich assessments, these reference points are often determined in  
1490 a secondary step that involves simulation analyses based on the results obtained from fitting the  
1491 assessment model.

1492 Data-limited approaches are used for many U.S. stocks and may be used for a variety of reasons. The  
1493 most common reason is when there is not enough data for more complete assessments. However, data-  
1494 limited methods are also employed as a stop-gap for setting catch limits between more complete  
1495 assessments and as a default approach when a more complete assessment has issues and is not deemed  
1496 appropriate for management. There are numerous data-limited methods available that differ in their  
1497 data requirements and underlying assumptions (Newman et al., 2014). Several methods rely only on  
1498 catch data, while others incorporate life-history information or apply multipliers to trends in biomass. All  
1499 data-limited approaches rely on fairly strong assumptions about stock dynamics (e.g., the amount that a  
1500 stock has depleted over time) and therefore should not be considered a long-term approach to support  
1501 sustainable management of important stocks.

### 1502 **5.3.2. Outputs and uses**

1503 Stock assessment models are designed to give fishery managers numerical estimates of relevant fishery  
1504 management quantities. Common outputs and their uses include the following:

- 1505 1) Reference Points:
  - 1506 a)  $F_{MSY}$ —The average fishing rate, or suitable proxy (e.g.,  $F_{40\%}$ ), that would produce the maximum  
1507 sustainable yield. This serves as the limit beyond which overfishing is considered to occur.
  - 1508 b)  $B_{MSY}$ —The average stock abundance when fishing at  $F_{MSY}$  (the associated Minimum Stock Size  
1509 Threshold (MSST) below which the stock is considered overfished is often a specified fraction of  
1510  $B_{MSY}$  or its proxies).
- 1511 2) Stock Status Determination—The comparison of current stock abundance and fishing rates  
1512 produced by an assessment model with the associated fishing and biomass reference points.
- 1513 3) Harvest Control Rule—A formula that calculates a limit or target catch level and is based on a stock's  
1514 abundance and other factors (e.g., scientific uncertainty, risk policy). Many control rules strive to  
1515 attain a large fraction of MSY while keeping the risk of overfishing at an agreed level. National  
1516 Standard 1 Guidelines require that scientific uncertainty be taken into account when calculating  
1517 target harvest policies.
- 1518 4) Harvest Recommendation—Level of catch recommended for achieving the objectives of the harvest  
1519 policy, typically based on forecasts of abundance trends. For federal fishery managers, this value  
1520 provides the technical input needed by a council's Scientific and Statistical Committee to  
1521 recommend an acceptable biological catch (ABC) to its council.

1522 As described in more detail in Section 5.4, the uncertainties surrounding outputs 1 through 4 should be  
1523 characterized and measured as completely as possible to support effective and robust management  
1524 decisions. Because stock assessment models are the foundation for determining stock status and setting

1525 catch limits, there is a high level of public scrutiny and strong peer review requirements (see Chapter 6).  
1526 Additionally, assessment models and their outputs have broader applications (Section 1.2).

1527 Many demands are placed on the stock assessment modeling community. Some managers and  
1528 stakeholders want simpler methods that are quick to implement and transparent to a wider community,  
1529 while others want methods that are more comprehensive and/or more heavily evaluated during each  
1530 application. There is also interest in more spatial resolution to better match the on-the-water  
1531 observations of local fishermen. Ideally, there is a preference for more complete measures of  
1532 uncertainty to better implement precautionary approaches and avoid surprises as estimates change  
1533 over time. No one modeling approach will satisfy all these demands, but progress is being made in  
1534 several areas highlighted next and in chapter 9.

### 1535 **5.3.3. Categories**

1536 A range of stock assessment models has been designed to provide tools across a variety of scenarios,  
1537 mainly related to data availability (Table 5.1). Where data are limited, or when simple analyses are used  
1538 for monitoring between more comprehensive assessments, modeling approaches tend to be relatively  
1539 simple and rely on fairly rigid assumptions about stock and fishery dynamics (Categories 1 and 2 from  
1540 Table 5.1). In these cases, assumptions about important factors are often based on knowledge from  
1541 stocks with similar attributes, so scenarios with limited data can still produce stock-specific results.  
1542 Many stocks in U.S. managed fisheries do not have sufficient data for conducting stock assessments that  
1543 provide typical management advice (i.e., stock status and catch limits/targets). However, the U.S.  
1544 requirement to establish annual catch limits (ACLs) in all fisheries has forced a rapid response by stock  
1545 assessment scientists to develop and advance methodology for data-limited stocks (Cummings et al.,  
1546 2014; "Data-Limited" methods in Table 5.1). A study of methods for determining ACLs in the U.S.  
1547 (Berkson and Thorson, 2015) indicated that 52% rely on methods that consider only catch data to  
1548 provide management advice.

1549 When a moderate amount of historical data are available, such as catches over time and an indicator of  
1550 changes in stock abundance (or relative abundance) over time, then aggregate biomass dynamics  
1551 models can be used (category 3 from Table 5.1). These models calculate how large the stock must have  
1552 been to have exhibited the trends observed in the abundance data while the observed catch was being  
1553 removed. These estimates are conditioned on population turnover rates indicated by available biological  
1554 data.

1555 Moving up the data availability spectrum, a third class of stage-based approaches uses the distributions  
1556 of ages or lengths in the fishery harvests and/or surveys (categories 4 through 6 in Table 5.1). Age  
1557 and/or size data are particularly useful because they facilitate estimates of total mortality rates for fish  
1558 stocks (i.e., the proportional decline in fish abundance with age indicates the magnitude of fishing plus  
1559 natural mortality). When eras of high and low mortality coincide with eras of higher and lower levels of  
1560 catch, these methods can infer the size of the stock from which the catches were taken. When historical

1561 time series of age/size data are available, the models can also calculate, by age/size, the degree to which  
1562 fish are available to (selected by) a fishery or survey. Further, age/size time series also allow for  
1563 calculation of annual fluctuations in the amount of young fish entering the stock (i.e., recruitment) as  
1564 well as annual fluctuations in body growth. Additional expansions and information, such as spatial  
1565 model configurations and inclusion of ecosystem data, can be considered for any assessment model  
1566 framework.

1567 **Table 5.1.** Categories of stock assessment models with focus on the population dynamics  
1568 structure (e.g., growth rates, mortality, reproductive characteristics), data requirements  
1569 (minimum and data typically used), and types of management advice that can be provided  
1570 with associated limitations. “Catch” refers to total catch (including discards to the extent  
1571 feasible) in biomass or numbers but without information on age and/or length structure.  
1572 “Abundance index” generally refers to a relative index assumed to be proportional to the  
1573 abundance of a fish stock as modified by the assumed or estimated size and age selectivity of  
1574 the fishery or survey that is the source of the data.  
1575

## 1. Data-Limited

- **Example methods:** Depletion-Based Stock Reduction Analysis (DBSRA; Dick and MacCall, 2011); Depletion Corrected Average Catch (DCAC;\* MacCall, 2009); Surplus Production MSY (Martell and Froese, 2013); Egg-Escapement, Mean Length Estimation (Gedamke and Hoenig, 2006)
- **Population dynamics:** Typically not modeled, but some methods include basic assumptions and expert opinion on natural mortality, stock depletion, sustainability of recent catch, and others
- **Data requirements:** Total catch and/or other biological information as available
- **Management advice:** Catch recommendations and sustainability of recent average catch
- **Limitations:** Results are a placeholder for management advice until direct information on stock status and/or trends can be obtained

## 2. Index-Based

- **Example methods:** Basic linear models and time series analyses, An Index Method (AIM; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox\*)
- **Population dynamics:** Typically not modeled
- **Data requirements:** Time series of total catch and/or stock abundance
- **Management advice:** Mostly qualitative advice about stock trends and whether management action is triggered as part of a harvest control rule (e.g., abundance index goes below a prespecified threshold)
- **Limitations:** Does not provide estimates of stock biomass

## 3. Aggregate Biomass Dynamics

- **Example methods:** Schaefer or Pella-Tomlinson Production Models (ASPIC;\* Prager, 1994); delay-difference models (Collie and Sissenwine, 1983; Deriso, 1990)
- **Population dynamics:** Aggregate biomass dynamics with minimal parameters (carrying capacity— $K$ , intrinsic population growth rate— $r$ , initial biomass— $B_0$ , and a catchability coefficient— $q$ , related to fishing mortality or survey abundance index); delay-difference models expand on this to include at least two life stages and assumptions about growth and natural mortality
- **Data requirements:** Time series of total catch and at least one index of stock abundance; delay-difference models typically have abundance indices for each life stage, and information on growth and natural mortality
- **Management advice:** Estimates of maximum sustainable yield (MSY), current biomass ( $B$ ) relative to  $B_{MSY}$ , current fishing rate ( $F$ ) relative to  $F_{MSY}$ , and the current catch that corresponds to  $F_{MSY}$
- **Limitations:** Requires contrast in the data (i.e., periods of high and low catch and biomass, as well as variability in the abundance index over time); typically ignores biological information regarding individual body growth, maturity, and natural mortality rate; provides more detailed population dynamics but still aggregates dynamics within life stages

#### 4. Virtual Population Analysis (VPA)

- **Example methods:** VPA and Dual Zone VPA (ADAPT & VPA-2BOX; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox\*)
- **Population dynamics:** Starting from the last year in the data and the oldest age for each cohort in that year, abundance-at-age is calculated backwards in time using catch-at-age and natural mortality; models are often tuned by fitting to age-specific abundance indices
- **Data requirements:** Complete, high-quality catch-at-age and weight-at-age data for every time step and at least one abundance index for calibration ("tuning" in a VPA context); age-specific abundance indices are often used
- **Management advice:** Time series of biomass and fishing rates are primary sources of advice; however, model output can be analyzed separately to evaluate stock-recruitment relationships; these additional analyses help provide complete advice on stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets
- **Limitations:** Obtaining complete catch-at-age data that can be considered known without error at every time step is not realistic for many stocks; estimation techniques often use specific approaches that create challenges for characterizing uncertainty (e.g., confidence intervals); method performs best when the fishery is the dominant source of mortality (i.e., fishing mortality > natural mortality)

#### 5. Statistical Catch-at-Length (SCAL)

- **Example methods:** Statistical Catch-At-Length (SCALE; NOAA Fisheries Toolbox\*); Stock Synthesis (SS;\* Methot and Wetzel, 2013); MultifanCL (Fournier et al., 1990); crustacean models (Zheng et al., 1995; Chen et al., 2005)
- **Population dynamics:** Length-structured, with a length-based transition matrix to update the stock's length composition between consecutive time steps; can incorporate natural mortality, growth, recruitment, and fishing mortality at length; the inclusion of size data from fishery or survey catches allows for the estimation of size selectivity patterns by fleets/surveys and the time sequence of recruitments
- **Data requirements:** Total catch by fleet, at least one abundance index, length composition data from fleets/surveys (some missing data allowed); may allow the catch data to be separated into landings and discards
- **Management advice:** Stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets relative to management reference points (if stock-recruitment dynamics are embedded); otherwise advice is limited to estimated time series of biomass and fishing rates
- **Limitations:** Typically less informative about recruitment and mortality of older individuals than when age data are available

#### 6. Statistical Catch-at-Age (SCAA)

- **Example methods:** Stock Synthesis (SS;\* Methot and Wetzel, 2013); Age-Structured Assessment Program (ASAP;\* Legault and Restrepo, 1999); Assessment Model for Alaska (AMAK#), Beaufort Assessment Model (BAM; Craig, 2012); MultifanCL (Fournier and Archibald, 1992; Fournier et al., 1990); C++ Algorithmic Stock Assessment Library (CASAL; Bull et al., 2012)
- **Population dynamics:** Age-structured, incorporating natural mortality, growth, recruitment and recruitment variability, fishing mortality, and selectivity
- **Data requirements:** Total catch by fleet, at least one abundance index, samples of age compositions by fleet/survey; missing data are allowed (in contrast to VPA); some implementations allow the catch data to be separated into landings and discards
- **Management advice:** Stock status and forecasts of catch limits and targets relative to management reference points (if stock-recruitment dynamics are embedded); otherwise advice is limited to estimated time series of biomass and fishing rates
- **Limitations:** Flexibility of software package to include additional factors is highly diverse and difficult to categorize; direct estimates of MSY-based quantities depend on whether stock-recruitment dynamics are included

1578 \*<http://nft.nefsc.noaa.gov/index.html>  
1579 #<https://github.com/NMFS-toolbox/AMAK>

#### 1580 5.3.4. Application and choice

1581 Assessment models use advanced statistical and computational methods to enable estimation of the  
1582 parameters of the model, which can be as many as thousands in the most data-rich and flexible cases.  
1583 When detailed, flexible models are applied to relatively simple data sets, some factors in the models  
1584 need to be specified as constants or the models will need extra constraints/penalties on parameters for  
1585 those factors to prevent the results from becoming highly uncertain or illogical. Conversely, when  
1586 simpler model configurations are confronted with more detailed data, they may not adequately  
1587 represent the processes that created some of the detailed patterns in the data. Therefore, they can  
1588 produce biased results. In general, model choice is governed by data availability, but another important  
1589 consideration relates to the *principal of parsimony*. The level of detail in the assessment relates to the  
1590 scale of investment in data collection; thus, to maximize limited resources, assessments should be as  
1591 simple as possible while achieving the management objectives. In many cases, age-structured data and  
1592 other information are important for achieving optimum yield from fish stocks. However, for less  
1593 important stocks, it may not be worth the investment to collect such detailed data.

1594 Integrated analysis models, such as Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013), provide flexibility to  
1595 combine aspects of both age-structured and biomass dynamics models. These methods are frequently  
1596 used in stock assessments because they can be adjusted to match a variety of data availability scenarios.  
1597 Integrated analysis here refers to the ability to simultaneously include length and age, tag–recapture,  
1598 and other data. Because these are flexible models, programs such as Stock Synthesis support a variety of  
1599 configurations to implement many of the model categories in Table 5.1, particularly the SCAA and SCAL  
1600 models. One potential drawback of integrated analysis models is that the flexibility may result in  
1601 implementation errors or configurations that are too detailed given the data available. Drawbacks such  
1602 as these emphasize the importance of documentation, best practices, and user guides for stock  
1603 assessment methodology.

## 1604 **5.4. Assessment uncertainty and decision support**

1605

### 1606 **5.4.1. Characterizing scientific uncertainty**

1607

1608 It is not possible to observe every process affecting every individual fish in a stock (without error);  
1609 therefore, there will always be some degree of uncertainty surrounding stock assessment results. This  
1610 uncertainty can be reduced by improving and expanding observing systems and by conducting research  
1611 to understand processes. However, acknowledging and characterizing uncertainty is an integral part of  
1612 fisheries management. Because information is not perfect and complete, the advice that results from  
1613 analyzing that information may not be perfect either. Therefore, uncertainty is characterized and  
1614 adjustments are made to buffer against negative outcomes, such as overfishing, when information is not  
1615 perfect (Methot et al., 2014).

1616

1617 Six types of uncertainty that commonly receive attention in fisheries (Peterman, 2004; Link et al., 2012)  
1618 include the following:

- 1619 1. Process error (or uncertainty due to natural variability)
- 1620 2. Observation error (or measurement or estimation uncertainty)
- 1621 3. Structural complexity (or model uncertainty)
- 1622 4. Communication uncertainty (issues related to interpretation and use of results)
- 1623 5. Objective uncertainty (or lack of clarity on goals and objectives, often included with outcome  
1624 uncertainty)
- 1625 6. Outcome uncertainty (or management performance uncertainty)

1626

1627 From this list, 1–3 may be accounted for within stock assessments, where 4–6 are not typically  
1628 addressed during analyses. For process and observation error, approaches that are likely to characterize  
1629 uncertainty most appropriately are models that are explicitly statistical that allow for sufficient flexibility  
1630 to capture both sources of error at the same time as. However, simpler models can provide reliable  
1631 fisheries management advice, especially if they have been evaluated through simulation testing and/or  
1632 decision support analyses (see Section 5.4.2).

1633 Several statistical methods that are used frequently can help address and measure uncertainty in stock  
1634 assessments. For instance, Bayesian statistics provide an opportunity to use prior knowledge about a  
1635 certain process or model parameter to help with estimation in the assessment model. This method is  
1636 especially useful when there is not enough information in the input data to estimate assessment  
1637 parameters, and previous analyses do not provide enough certainty to specify the exact value of the  
1638 parameters at the start of the assessment. The combined use of prior knowledge and information in the  
1639 data supports an appropriate treatment of uncertainty in many assessments.

1640 Another statistical approach that is becoming more common in stock assessments is the use of random  
1641 effects, or state–space models. With this technique, assessment processes and parameters can be  
1642 treated not only as fixed estimates, but also as parameters that change over time and/or space

1643 according to a random process. Previously, state–space techniques were too cumbersome to implement  
1644 in relatively complex stock assessment models; however, recent developments in computing power and  
1645 statistical software have made it possible to do so. Assessments can now account for shifts in population  
1646 and/or fishery dynamics without a detailed understanding of the cause of those shifts. Thus, state–space  
1647 models offer a sophisticated approach to addressing uncertainty that accounts for both observation and  
1648 process errors and balances total uncertainty between these two components. Although full state–space  
1649 stock assessments are not yet commonly used in the United States, these assessments provide a very  
1650 active area of research and development.

1651 A commonly used approach to account for process error in U.S. stock assessments is model sensitivity  
1652 analyses. This technique evaluates the structural uncertainty of models. In other words, this approach  
1653 tests to see how the results compare when other mathematical equations are used, data are added to  
1654 or eliminated from the assessment, different values of parameters are selected, or different  
1655 assumptions about model parameters are considered. Commonly this approach narrows the choice to  
1656 one or a small set of plausible model configurations, thus arriving at what is considered a good model.  
1657 However, resting on a single “base” model ignores the total uncertainty across the set of plausible  
1658 models. In some cases, assessments try to average results across the suite of models, but more technical  
1659 guidance is needed on how to do this in a stock assessment context. Although climate and weather  
1660 forecasts rely heavily on ensemble modeling techniques, there are enough differences in the data and  
1661 modeling approaches that the scientific basis behind their methods does not directly translate to a stock  
1662 assessment application. Essentially, weather forecasts can evaluate model skill by direct comparison  
1663 with observed events, but in stock assessments, the true occurrence (e.g., last year’s total biomass)  
1664 cannot be observed without uncertainty. Nevertheless, there is a growing preference to use multimodel  
1665 inference for characterizing process errors in stock assessments, and quantitative approaches are  
1666 currently being used for some stocks (Stewart and Martell, 2015).

1667 Within a single assessment model configuration, several diagnostic tools can be used to evaluate the  
1668 consistency and stability of a model. Retrospective analyses (such as Mohn, 1999) test for systematic  
1669 inconsistencies, or patterns in the results, when the model excludes data year-by-year going back in  
1670 time. If models do not perform well according to this diagnostic, then there is an issue with the  
1671 assessment and alternative model configurations may be evaluated. Thus, retrospective analysis is  
1672 useful for evaluating the extent of model mis-specification (Hanselman et al., 2013), which may help  
1673 address process error. However, detecting and accounting for retrospective patterns is not  
1674 straightforward and remains an area of active research (Deroba, 2014; Hurtado-Ferro et al., 2015;  
1675 Brooks and Legault, 2016; Miller and Legault, 2017). Although other diagnostic tools can evaluate model  
1676 stability, retrospective analyses are commonly used because when a model shows a pattern, researchers  
1677 tend to be skeptical about the assessment results.

1678

#### 1679 **5.4.2. Decision support**

1680 Decision support analyses use the uncertainty surrounding the outputs of stock assessment models and  
1681 other components of the management process to evaluate tradeoffs among options. The need to  
1682 quantify uncertainty was reinforced under the National Standard 1 (NS1) Guidelines, which specify the  
1683 requirement apply a risk policy that accounts for scientific uncertainty when setting catch limits (Methot  
1684 et al., 2014). Assessment scientists from NOAA Fisheries provided important technical guidance for  
1685 applying this aspect of the NS1 Guidelines (Shertzer et al., 2009) where they showed how the probability  
1686 range (i.e., uncertainty) around an estimated overfishing level (OFL) could be used to set a catch target  
1687 below the OFL that had a specified probability,  $P^*$ , of allowing overfishing to occur. According to the NS1  
1688 Guidelines, the chance of exceeding the true OFL must not exceed 50%, and the approach from Shertzer  
1689 et al. allows managers to specify the level of risk they are willing to tolerate (up to a 50% chance of  
1690 overfishing). There are other acceptable approaches to account for uncertainty in catch  
1691 recommendations, and these are typically more generic than  $P^*$ . For example, the Pacific Fishery  
1692 Management Council relies on a meta-analysis of the performance of past assessments to develop an  
1693 overall level of assessment uncertainty to feed into the  $P^*$  approach (Ralston et al., 2011).

1694 Decision tables are another tool increasingly being used in stock assessments to show managers a range  
1695 of outcomes if errors occur in certain aspects of the assessment. Decision tables contrast the effects of a  
1696 range of possible management decisions (e.g., harvest levels) with a range of stock assessment  
1697 scenarios. For example, this approach can show how a higher quota could quickly deplete a stock if the  
1698 stock size is actually lower than the current estimate. Conversely, the table could show how a lower  
1699 quota may result in missed fishing opportunity if stock biomass is actually higher than estimated.

1700 Another, more comprehensive decision-support tool is termed Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE;  
1701 de la Mare, 1986; Smith et al., 1999; Punt et al., 2014). An MSE takes the basic concept of the decision  
1702 table and plays it out in computer simulations many times to reveal the performance characteristics of  
1703 the entire fishery–science–management system. MSEs contribute to a transparent decision-making  
1704 process because they include stakeholders in the earliest stages where objectives are defined. This  
1705 approach helps improve management decisions, from data collection, to modeling approaches, to  
1706 harvest control rules that have the most needed properties. Essentially, any decision point in the  
1707 science–management process can be evaluated using MSE, such as optimizing between fishery-  
1708 independent versus fishery-dependent data collection (Cummings et al., 2016). Because of the variety of  
1709 uncertainties that can be addressed using the MSE technique, NOAA Fisheries has been expanding its  
1710 capacity in this rapidly growing field by supporting projects and hiring staff dedicated to conducting  
1711 MSEs.

1712 **5.5. Strengths and challenges**  
1713

1714 NOAA Fisheries is a world leader in the science of stock assessment modeling. With substantial modeling  
1715 expertise and sophisticated software, the assessment models used by NOAA Fisheries are accurate and  
1716 efficient and can accommodate a variety of stocks with different types and qualities of data. These  
1717 models provide the quantitative advice that has supported a successful and sustainable U.S. fisheries  
1718 management system. However, despite many decades of assessment model evolution, old challenges  
1719 remain unresolved (Maunder and Piner, 2014), and new issues have come to the forefront.

1720 • **More stock assessments should be linked to ecosystem or socioeconomic drivers.**

1721 All stock assessment models are simplifications of nature. They operate on less detailed spatial  
1722 scales than the scale on which fish interact with fishing operations and their local habitats. The  
1723 models tend to assume constant or randomly fluctuating rate processes that are rarely linked to  
1724 specific ecosystem or socioeconomic causal factors. The standard assumption is that average,  
1725 although variable, processes have been operating for the past decades, and these processes will  
1726 continue to fluctuate around that same average in the future. However, as climate change and  
1727 other mechanisms cause ecosystems to shift from recent average conditions, it may not be safe  
1728 to assume that past conditions reflect the future. In fact, process errors (Section 5.4.1) may  
1729 occur in some stock assessments when an assessment does not include important ecosystem  
1730 effects.

1731  
1732 Thus, the scopes of certain stock assessments need to be expanded to incorporate factors other  
1733 than fishing that influence the status and likely future direction of harvested stocks. Many  
1734 important processes and dynamics operate within an ecosystem; consequently, there is a  
1735 variety of approaches to account for ecosystem dynamics within assessments. For instance,  
1736 assessment models are generally flexible enough to incorporate factors related to climate  
1737 change, predator–prey dynamics, habitat effects, species distributions and movements, and  
1738 others in a variety of ways. The primary challenges to expanding assessments are in  
1739 understanding the relationship between ecosystems and fish stocks and obtaining data that  
1740 capture these relationships. Through ongoing research efforts and advanced techniques, NOAA  
1741 Fisheries has made good progress in expanding the scope of certain assessments. As described  
1742 in Box 5.1, NOAA Fisheries incorporates ecosystem factors into assessments where there is a  
1743 strong case for doing so and the appropriate data are available.

1744  
1745 Another important detail to consider regarding ecosystem and socioeconomic data and their  
1746 incorporation in stock assessments is the ability to project those dynamics. Assessment models  
1747 are used to develop forecasts of stock and fishery dynamics and predict future catches and stock  
1748 status. These forecasts serve as the basis for developing recommendations regarding  
1749 sustainable harvest levels. If features of the assessment model are linked to ecosystem or  
1750 socioeconomic factors, then projections of those factors are needed. Certain ecosystem

1751 dynamics can be forecasted with much higher skill than others, and the resolution of the  
1752 forecasts needs to match that of the assessment forecasts. Thus, in addition to increasing  
1753 ecosystem data collection and process studies, there is a need to improve forecast skill for  
1754 important ecosystem dynamics on time and space scales that are relevant to fisheries  
1755 management. Although Box 5.1 demonstrates progress in this area, there is a definite need for  
1756 continued advancement, and increased use of additional data and drivers in stock assessments  
1757 will be contingent on three important factors:

- 1758
- 1759 1. Continued research to understand linkages between stock dynamics and  
1760 ecosystem/socioeconomic drivers
  - 1761 2. Availability of relevant ecosystem/socioeconomic data (see Chapter 9)  
1762
  - 1763 3. Priority and capability for implementing expanded stock assessment models and forecasts (see  
1764 Chapter 9 for a discussion of modeling capability and Chapter 10 for a prioritized approach to  
1765 determining which assessments should be expanded) .  
1766

1767 • **Guidance is needed for appropriately characterizing process errors.**

1768 There is a long history in stock assessments of exploring a variety of model configurations and  
1769 model types within assessments although, historically, scientific advice has typically been based  
1770 on the results from one “best” model run. However, scientists and managers are becoming less  
1771 comfortable with relying on a single model and are increasingly interested in capturing multiple  
1772 theories about stock and fishery dynamics to form the basis for quantitative advice. Using a  
1773 range of models offers appropriate treatment of the true process error and uncertainty  
1774 surrounding the advice, but there are several important considerations in need of research and  
1775 guidance:

- 1776
- 1777 1. How should results from multiple stock assessment models be communicated and/or  
1778 combined to provide advice to managers?
  - 1779 2. What diagnostics and measures of model skill should be used when evaluating a suite of  
1780 assessment models and selecting one or more model as the basis for management  
1781 advice?
  - 1782 3. How should the total uncertainty from a group of assessment models be appropriately  
1783 characterized and used in the management process?  
1784

1785 • **Research is still needed to inform basic stock assessment decisions.**

1786 The current stock assessment process works well in most cases. However, stock assessment  
1787 models are complex and diverse, so despite decades of development and application, continued  
1788 work is still needed to address the basic features and assumptions of these models. For  
1789 instance, there are often requests to use new data sources (or all available data) within  
1790 assessments. Yet, not all data are necessarily appropriate for assessments because they may not

1791 adequately represent stock dynamics, they may not be in a format that is compatible with a  
1792 particular assessment model, or they are made available too late in the assessment process to  
1793 be evaluated sufficiently. Assessment models tend to perform better when there is strong  
1794 contrast in the data; that is, the observations cover a range of conditions from high to low stock  
1795 abundance and from high to low levels of fishing. Unfortunately, most sampling programs were  
1796 not in place throughout the several decades in which fisheries have impacted fish stocks. As a  
1797 result, the data are more informative about recent trends but not about the absolute condition  
1798 of the stock relative to historical conditions that predate fishing. Where fish abundance data can  
1799 be adjusted to provide assessments with measures of absolute abundance, the assessment then  
1800 contains a strong anchor point regarding total biomass. The availability of absolute abundance is  
1801 a major step forward in knowledge for stock assessments. Unfortunately, fish are difficult to  
1802 sample in a fully calibrated way, so most surveys and fishery-dependent indices of abundance  
1803 reflect relative changes over time but not absolute measures of fish abundance.

1804  
1805 Stock assessment teams, review panels, and management groups (e.g., council SSCs) play an  
1806 important role in determining which data sources should be incorporated into specific  
1807 assessments. After data are selected and prepared for a particular assessment model there still  
1808 may be issues to resolve. For example, more than one data set may capture particular aspects of  
1809 the stock, but conflict in the information being passed to the model. This conflict can inflate  
1810 uncertainty or create instability with the assessment model and therefore can result in a debate  
1811 about how to statistically “weight” various data sources. The following list highlights several  
1812 areas where further research and development are needed to provide objective, standardized,  
1813 and quantitative approaches to help guide several basic decisions within stock assessments:

- 1814
- 1815 1. Selection and processing of a variety of data sources for use in assessments
  - 1816 2. Weighting of data sources within assessments
  - 1817 3. Dealing with conflicting information and correlated or confounded model components
- 1818

1819 • **Data-limited stock assessment methods do not provide complete information to managers.**  
1820 With limited information, researchers cannot obtain the same results or certainty available in  
1821 stock assessments that use more complete data. Unfortunately, filling these gaps by collecting  
1822 more data is not the only answer, because for many stocks, data collection is technically difficult  
1823 or cost prohibitive. Data-limited methods give us tools to prioritize stocks into those for which  
1824 full assessments appear unnecessary, and those for which relevant data needs to be collected to  
1825 conduct a more complete assessment. Thus, there is a need to manage expectations with data-  
1826 limited stock assessments (Cummings et al., 2014) and a need to develop strategies for  
1827 addressing fishery management needs and mandates when data are not available to do so.

1828

1829

1830 **Box 5.1. NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments with ecosystem information**

1831 NOAA Fisheries conducts stock assessments to produce scientific advice for fishery managers. The main  
1832 objectives of fishery stock assessments are to evaluate stock status relative to defined limits, and to  
1833 recommend harvest levels that optimize yield, prevent overfishing, and rebuild depleted stocks as  
1834 necessary. In most cases, assessments are conducted from a single-species perspective, where ecosystem  
1835 and environmental factors are not drivers of stock  
1836 dynamics, but are assumed to either be constant or to  
1837 contribute to unexplained variation in stock abundance or  
1838 biology. However, for a number of stocks, ecosystem  
1839 information has been directly incorporated into  
1840 assessment models, thereby providing fishery managers  
1841 with stock-specific advice that accounts for changes in  
1842 the ecosystem. Some West Coast salmon forecasts are  
1843 incorporate numerous ocean and ecosystem indicators.  
1844 Assessments of certain North Pacific groundfish stocks  
1845 and West Coast small pelagic stocks incorporate water  
1846 temperature, because this variable affects the number of  
1847 fish encountered by abundance surveys. The assessment  
1848 of the butterfish stock in the northeast Atlantic also  
1849 accounts for habitat effects on availability to abundance  
1850 surveys. In addition, for Atlantic herring, northern  
1851 shrimp, and Gulf of Mexico groupers, the numbers of fish  
1852 that die due to natural causes (i.e., natural mortality) are  
1853 modeled using ecosystem indices. With herring, an  
1854 important prey species in the northeast Atlantic, predator  
1855 dynamics are incorporated into the stock assessment, and  
1856 for groupers, fishermen and scientists have observed events where large numbers of fish die when  
1857 substantial red tides occur (i.e., harmful algal blooms). Thus, a red tide index is incorporated in the  
1858 grouper stock assessments.



1859 The examples highlighted here refer to assessments that incorporated ecosystem data directly as drivers in  
1860 the actual assessment models. However, ecosystem data can also be effectively considered when  
1861 preparing assessment input data (or during other steps of the process not summarized here). The number  
1862 of assessments that incorporate ecosystem data has continued to increase over time. In 2005, 4% of the  
1863 stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries included ecosystem factors, and by 2015 that number  
1864 increased to 8%. As research and monitoring of stock and ecosystem dynamics continues to expand, the  
1865 number of stock assessments and management measures that consider ecosystem variability and change  
1866 will continue to increase.

1867

1868

1869 **References**

- 1870 A'mar, Z. T., A. E. Punt, and M. W. Dorn. 2009. The evaluation of two management strategies for the  
1871 Gulf of Alaska walleye pollock fishery under climate change. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 66:1614–1632.  
1872 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsp044>
- 1873 Berkson, J., and J. T. Thorson. 2015. The determination of data-poor catch limits in the United States: is  
1874 there a better way? *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72:237–242. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu085>
- 1875 Brodziak, J., and K. Piner. 2010. Model averaging and probable status of North Pacific striped marlin,  
1876 *Tetrapturus audax*. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 67:793–805. <https://doi.org/10.1139/F10-029>
- 1877 Brodziak, J., and C. M. Legault. 2005. Model averaging to estimate rebuilding targets for overfished  
1878 stocks. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 62:544–562. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f04-199>
- 1879 Brooks, E. N., and C. M. Legault. 2016. Retrospective forecasting—evaluating performance of stock  
1880 projections for New England groundfish stocks. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 73:935–950.  
1881 <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2015-0163>
- 1882 Buckland, S. T., K. P. Burnham, and N. H. Augustin. 1997. Model selection: an integral part of inference.  
1883 *Biometrics* 53:603–618. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2533961>
- 1884 Burnham, K. P., and D. R. Anderson. 1998. Model selection and inference: a practical information–  
1885 theoretic approach, 353 p. Springer Verlag, New York.
- 1886 Butterworth, D. S. 2007. Why a management procedure approach? Some positives and negatives. *ICES J.*  
1887 *Mar. Sci.* 64:613–617. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm003>
- 1888 Christensen, V., and C. J. Walters. 2004. Ecopath with ecosim: methods, capabilities and limitations.  
1889 *Ecol. Model.* 172(2–4):109–139. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2003.09.003>
- 1890 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, A. Rios, W. Harford, R. Trumble, R. Glazer, A. Acosta, and W. L. Michaels.  
1891 (2016 in review). Report of a GCFI Workshop: best practices and trade-offs between fishery-  
1892 dependent versus fishery-independent sampling in data-limited regions. Gulf and Caribbean Fisheries  
1893 Institute Conference, Panama City, Panama, November 9–13, 2015. NOAA Tech. Mem. NMFS-SEFSC-  
1894 xxx, 33pp.
- 1895 Cummings, N. J., M. Karnauskas, W. L. Michaels, and A. Acosta. 2014. Report of a GCFI workshop:  
1896 evaluation of current status and application of data-limited stock assessment methods in the larger  
1897 Caribbean region. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-SEFSC-661, 24 p. <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5DN4304>
- 1898 Curtis, K. L., J. S. Collie, C. M. Legault, and J. S. Link. 2013. Evaluating the performance of a multispecies  
1899 statistical catch-at-age model. *Can. J. Aquat. Sci.* 70:470–484. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2012-0229>  
1900

- 1901 de la Mare, W. K. 1986. Simulation studies on management procedures. Rep. Int. Whaling Comm. 36:  
1902 429–450.
- 1903 Deroba, J. J. 2014. Evaluating the consequences of adjusting fish stock assessment estimates of biomass  
1904 for retrospective patterns using Mohn's Rho. North Am. J. Fish. Manage. 34:380–390.  
1905 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02755947.2014.882452>  
1906
- 1907 Field, J. C., R. C. Francis, and K. Aydin. 2006. Top-down modelling and bottom-up dynamics: linking a  
1908 fisheries-based ecosystem model with climate hypotheses in the Northern California Current. Prog.  
1909 Oceanogr. 68:238–270. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2006.02.010>
- 1910 Francis, R. I. C. C. 2011. Data weighting in statistical fisheries stock assessment models. Can. J. Fish.  
1911 Aquat. Sci. 68:1124–1138. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f2011-025>
- 1912 Fogarty, M. J., W. J. Overholtz, and J. S. Link. 2012. Aggregate surplus production models for demersal  
1913 fishery resources of the Gulf of Maine. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 459:247–258.  
1914 <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps09789>
- 1915 Fulton, E. A., J. S. Link, I. C. Kaplan, M. Savina-Rolland, P. Johnson, C. Ainsworth, P. Horne, R. Gorton, R. J.  
1916 Gamble, A. D. M. Smith, and D. C. Smith. 2011. Lessons in modelling and management of marine  
1917 ecosystems: the Atlantis experience. Fish Fish. 12:171–188. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-  
1918 2979.2011.00412.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2011.00412.x)
- 1919 Gelman, A., J. B. Carlin, H. S. Stern and D. B. Rubin. 1995. Bayesian data analysis, 526 p. Chapman and  
1920 Hall, London.
- 1921 Hanselman, D. H., B. Clark, and M. Sigler. 2013. Report of the groundfish plan team retrospective  
1922 investigations group, 12 p. [Available at  
1923 [http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/stocks/Plan\\_Team/2013/Sept/Retrospectives\\_2013\\_final3.pdf](http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/stocks/Plan_Team/2013/Sept/Retrospectives_2013_final3.pdf).]
- 1924 Hanselman, D. H., S. K. Shotwell, P. J. F. Hulson, C. R. Lunsford, and J. Ianelli. 2013. Assessment of the  
1925 Pacific ocean perch stock in the Gulf of Alaska. In Stock assessment and fishery evaluation report for  
1926 the groundfish resources of the Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands and Gulf of Alaska, p. 757–832.  
1927 [Available from North Pacific Fishery Management Council, 605 W. 4<sup>th</sup> Ave., Suite 306, Anchorage,  
1928 AK 99501-2252.]
- 1929 Hill, S. L., G. M. Watters, A. E. Punt, M. K. McAllister, C. Le Quéré, and J. Turner. 2007. Model uncertainty  
1930 in the ecosystem approach to fisheries. Fish Fish. 8:315–336. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-  
1931 2979.2007.00257.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2007.00257.x)
- 1932 Holsman, K. K., J. Ianelli, K. Aydin, and A. E. Punt. In prep. Comparative biological reference points  
1933 estimated from temperature-specific multispecies and single species stock assessment models.  
1934 *Deepsea Research II* 00: 00–00.

- 1935 Hulson, P.-J. F., T. J. Quinn II, D. H. Hanselman, and J. N. Ianelli. 2013. Spatial modeling of Bering Sea  
1936 walleye pollock with integrated age-structured assessment models in a changing environment. *Can.*  
1937 *J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 70:1402–1416. <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2013-0020>
- 1938 Hurtado-Ferro, F., C. S. Szuwalski, J. L. Valero, S. C. Anderson, C. J. Cunningham, K. F. Johnson, R.  
1939 Licandeo, C. R. McGilliard, C. C. Monnahan, M. L. Muradian, K. Ono, K. A. Vert-Pre, A. R. Whitten,  
1940 and A. E. Punt. 2015. Looking in the rear-view mirror: bias and retrospective patterns in integrated,  
1941 age-structured stock assessment models. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72(1):99–110.  
1942 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu198>  
1943
- 1944 Ianelli, J. N., A. B. Hollowed, A. C. Haynie, F. J. Mueter, and N. A. Bond. 2011. Evaluating management  
1945 strategies for eastern Bering Sea walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in a changing  
1946 environment. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 68:1297–1304. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr010>
- 1947 Kinzey, D. and A. E. Punt. 2009. Multispecies and single-species models of fish population dynamics:  
1948 comparing parameter estimates. *Nat. Resour. Model.* 22:67–104. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-7445.2008.00030.x)  
1949 [7445.2008.00030.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1939-7445.2008.00030.x)
- 1950 Link, J. S., D. Mason, T. Lederhouse, S. Gaichas, T. Hartley, J. Ianelli, R. Methot, C. Stock, C. Stow, and H.  
1951 Townsend. 2015. Report from the Joint OAR-NMFS Modeling Uncertainty Workshop. NOAA Tech.  
1952 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-153, 31 p.
- 1953 Livingston, P. A., and J. Jurado-Molina. 2000. A multispecies virtual population analysis of the eastern  
1954 Bering Sea. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 57:294–299. <https://doi.org/doi:10.1006/jmsc.1999.0524>
- 1955 Magnusson, A., A. E. Punt, and R. Hilborn. 2013. Measuring uncertainty in fisheries stock assessment:  
1956 the delta method, bootstrap, and MCMC. *Fish Fish.* 14:325–342. [https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00473.x)  
1957 [2979.2012.00473.x](https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00473.x)
- 1958 Maunder, M. N., and K. R. Piner. Contemporary fisheries stock assessment: many issues still remain. *ICES*  
1959 *J. Mar. Sci.* 72:7–18. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu015>
- 1960 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent  
1961 approaches. *Fish. Res.* 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>
- 1962 Maunder and Punt, 2013. A review of integrated analysis in fisheries stock assessment. *Fish. Res.*  
1963 142:61–74. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.07.025>
- 1964 Marasco, R. J., D. Goodman, C. B. Grimes, P. W. Lawson, A. E. Punt, and T. J. Quinn II. 2007. Ecosystem-  
1965 based fisheries management: some practical suggestions. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 64:928–939.  
1966 <https://doi.org/10.1139/f07-062>
- 1967 Martell, S., and R. Froese. 2013. A simple method for estimating MSY from catch and resilience. *Fish*  
1968 *Fish.* 14:504–514. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2012.00485.x>

- 1969 Martell, S. J. D., and I. J. Stewart. 2014. Towards defining good practices for modeling time-varying  
1970 selectivity. *Fish. Res.* 158:84–95. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.11.001>
- 1971 Maunder, M. N., and A. E. Punt. 2004. Standardizing catch and effort data: a review of recent  
1972 approaches. *Fish. Res.* 70:141–159. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2004.08.002>
- 1973 Methot, R. D. Jr., and C. R. Wetzel. 2013. Stock synthesis: a biological and statistical framework for fish  
1974 stock assessment and fishery management. *Fish. Res.* 142:86–99.  
1975 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.10.012>
- 1976 Methot, R. D. Jr., G. R. Tromble, D. M. Lambert, and K. E. Greene. 2014. Implementing a science-based  
1977 system for preventing overfishing and guiding sustainable fisheries in the United States. *ICES J. Mar.*  
1978 *Sci.* 71:183–194. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst119>
- 1979 Miller, T. J., and C. M. Legault. 2017. Statistical behavior of retrospective patterns and their effects on  
1980 estimation of stock and harvest status. *Fish. Res.* 186:109–120.  
1981 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2016.08.002>
- 1982 Mohn, R. 1999. The retrospective problem in sequential population analysis: an investigation using cod  
1983 fishery and simulated data. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 56:473–488. <https://doi.org/10.1006/jmsc.1999.0481>
- 1984 Mueter, F. J., and B. A. Megrey. 2006. Using multi-species surplus production models to estimate  
1985 ecosystem-level maximum sustainable yields. *Fish. Res.* 81:189–201.  
1986 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2006.07.010>
- 1987 Mueter, F. J., N. A. Bond, J. N. Ianelli, and A. B. Hollowed. 2011. Expected declines in recruitment of  
1988 walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) in the eastern Bering Sea under future climate change. *ICES J.*  
1989 *Mar. Sci.* 68:1284–1296. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr022>
- 1990 Newman, D., T. Carruthers, A. MacCall, C. Porch, and L. Suatoni. Improving the science and management  
1991 of data-limited fisheries: an evaluation of current methods and recommended approaches.  
1992 Report R-14-09-B, 32 p. Natural Resources Defense Council, NY.  
1993 <https://doi.org/10.13140/2.1.3764.4481>
- 1994 Overland, J. E., and M. Wang. 2007. Future climate of the North Pacific Ocean. *EOS Trans. Am. Geophys.*  
1995 *Union* 88:182.
- 1996 Patterson, K. R. 1999. Evaluating uncertainty in harvest control law catches using Bayesian Markov chain  
1997 Monte Carlo virtual population analysis with adaptive rejection sampling and including structural  
1998 uncertainty. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 56:208–221. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f98-157>
- 1999 Peterman, R. M. 2004. Possible solutions to some challenges facing fisheries scientists and managers.  
2000 *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 61:1331–1343. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.08.017>
- 2001 Plagányi, É. E. 2007. Models for an ecosystem approach to fisheries. Food and Agriculture Organization  
2002 of the United Nations, Rome. [Available at <http://www.fao.org/docrep/010/a1149e/a1149e00.htm>.]

- 2003 Plagányi, É. E., A. E. Punt, R. Hillary, E. B. Morello, O. Thébaud, T. Hutton, R. D. Pillans, J. T. Thorson, E. A.  
2004 Fulton, A. D. M. Smith, F. Smith, P. Bayliss, M. Haywood, V. Lyne, and P. C. Rothlisberg. In press.  
2005 Models of intermediate complexity for ecosystem assessment to support tactical management  
2006 decisions in fisheries and conservation. *Fish Fish.* 00: 00-00.
- 2007 Prager, M. H., C. E. Porch, K. W. Shertzer, and J. F. Caddy. 2003. Targets and limits for management of  
2008 fisheries: a simple probability-based approach. *North Am. J. Fish. Manage.* 23:349–361.  
2009 [https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675\(2003\)023<0349:TALFMO>2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1577/1548-8675(2003)023<0349:TALFMO>2.0.CO;2)
- 2010 Prager, M. H., and K. W. Shertzer. 2010. Deriving acceptable biological catch from the overfishing limit:  
2011 implications for assessment models. *North Am. J. Fish. Manage.* 30:289–294.  
2012 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1577/M09-105.1>
- 2013 Punt, A. E., and G. P. Donovan. 2007. Developing management procedures that are robust to  
2014 uncertainty: lessons from the International Whaling Commission. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 64:603–612.  
2015 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm035>
- 2016 Punt, A. E., D. S. Butterworth, C. L. de Moor, J. A. A. De Oliveira, and M. Haddon. 2014. Management  
2017 strategy evaluation: best practices. *Fish Fish.* 17:303–334. <https://doi.org/10.1111/faf.12104>
- 2018 Punt, A. E., F. Hurtado-Ferro, and A. R. Whitten. 2014. Model selection for selectivity in fisheries stock  
2019 assessments. *Fish. Res.* 158:124–134. <https://doi.org/10.1577/M09-105.1>
- 2020 Ralston, S., A. E. Punt, O. S. Hamel, J. D. DeVore, and R. J. Conser. 2011. A meta-analytic approach to  
2021 quantifying scientific uncertainty in stock assessments. *Fish. Bull.* 109:217–231.
- 2022 Stewart, I. J., A. C. Hicks, I. G. Taylor, J. T. Thorson, C. Wetzel, and S. Kupschus. 2013. A  
2023 comparison of stock assessment uncertainty estimates using maximum likelihood and Bayesian  
2024 methods implemented with the same model framework. *Fish. Res.* 142:37–46.  
2025 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.07.003>
- 2026 Shertzer, C. E., M. H. Prager, and E. H. Williams. 2008. A probability-based approach to setting annual  
2027 catch levels. *Fish. Bull.* 106:225–232.
- 2028 Smith, A. D. M., K. J. Sainsbury, and R. A. Stevens. 1999. Implementing effective fisheries-management  
2029 systems—management strategy evaluation and the Australian partnership approach. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.*  
2030 56:967–979. <https://doi.org/10.1006/jmsc.1999.0540>
- 2031 Stewart, I. J., and S. J. D. Martell. 2015. Reconciling stock assessment paradigms to better inform  
2032 fisheries management. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 72(8):2187–2196. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsv061>
- 2033 Thorson, J. T., Shelton, A. O., Ward, E. J., Skaug, H. J., 2015a. Geostatistical delta-generalized linear  
2034 mixed models improve precision for estimated abundance indices for West Coast groundfishes. *ICES*  
2035 *J. Mar. Sci. J. Cons.* 72:1297–1310. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu243>
- 2036 Wang, M., J. E. Overland, and N. A. Bond. 2010. Climate projections for selected large marine  
2037 ecosystems. *J. Mar. Syst.* 79:258–266. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.11.028>

- 2038 Ward, E. J. 2008. A review and comparison of four commonly used Bayesian and maximum likelihood  
2039 model selection tools. *Ecol. Model.* 211:1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2007.10.030>
- 2040 Wilberg, M. J., and J. R. Bence. 2008. Performance of deviance information criterion model selection in  
2041 statistical catch-at-age analysis. *Fish. Res.* 93:212–221.  
2042 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2008.04.010>
- 2043 Zheng, J., M. C. Murphy, and G. H. Kruse. 1995. A length-based population model and stock–recruitment  
2044 relationships for red king crab, *Paralithodes camtschaticus*, in Bristol Bay, Alaska. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat.*  
2045 *Sci.* 52:1229–1246. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f95-120>
- 2046
- 2047

2048 **Chapter 6. Quality Assurance in the Stock Assessment Process**

2049  
2050 **Chapter highlights**

- 2051 • **Objective peer reviews of stock assessments are necessary to help determine that the best**
- 2052 **scientific information available is used as the basis for fisheries management.**
- 2053 • **Independent regional peer review processes improve the integrity, reliability, and credibility**
- 2054 **of scientific information used for fishery management.**
- 2055 • **Stock assessment reviews vary in their extent in accordance with the “terms of reference”**
- 2056 **that guide a particular assessment peer review.**
- 2057 • **The review process provides transparency and opportunities for stakeholder input.**
- 2058 • **There is a trade-off between maintaining high standards for peer reviews and increasing the**
- 2059 **number of completed assessments.**

2060  
2061 **6.1.0. National guidance on science quality assurance**

2062  
2063 National Standard 2 (NS2) of the 2007 MSA specifies that conservation and management measures for  
2064 federally managed fisheries should be based upon the best scientific information available (BSIA). The  
2065 NS2 Guidelines were developed to ensure that the BSIA is used when providing advice to fishery  
2066 management councils (NOAA, 2013; NOAA, 2016). This guidance includes the following criteria for  
2067 evaluating BSIA: relevance, inclusiveness, objectivity, transparency and openness, timeliness,  
2068 verification and validation, and peer review as appropriate. Scientific peer review is described as an  
2069 important criterion in determining the BSIA, and for situations where rigorous, independent peer review  
2070 is necessary, the NS2 Guidelines adopt many of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) peer  
2071 review standards (OMB 2004). These standards include balance in expertise, knowledge, and bias; lack  
2072 of conflicts of interest; independence from the work being reviewed; and transparency of the peer  
2073 review process. The NS2 Guidelines recognize that varying degrees of independence may be required for  
2074 various reviews depending on the novelty, controversy, and complexity of the review. For example, an  
2075 assessment update may be sufficiently reviewed with only regional expertise, while a review of  
2076 emerging methods or controversial topics may require a more rigorous, independent peer review  
2077 process. Deciding on an appropriate scope for the review is linked with how best to balance the need for  
2078 a high quantity of assessments for timely management decisions with the need for rigorous peer  
2079 reviews when necessary.

2080  
2081 The NS2 Guidelines indicate that regional science centers and their respective councils have the  
2082 discretion to determine the appropriate form of peer review needed for each stock assessment. The  
2083 guidelines also clarify the role of the Fishery Management Councils’ Science and Statistical Committees  
2084 (SSCs) in the scientific review process. A peer review process is not a substitute for an SSC, but should

2085 work in conjunction with the SSC. The NS2 Guidelines also clarified the contents of the Stock Assessment  
2086 and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) report, which can consist of a set of documents that a council uses to  
2087 make decisions. The overall objectives of the NS2 Guidelines are to ensure the highest level of integrity  
2088 and strengthen public confidence in the quality, validity, and reliability of scientific information  
2089 distributed by NOAA Fisheries to support fishery management actions.

2090

### 2091 **6.2.0. Overview of the stock assessment review process for fisheries** 2092 **management**

2093

2094 Well-established peer review processes are in place in each region (NOAA, 2016). Each peer review can  
2095 vary based on the different stages of the review (e.g., review of the data collection, modeling methods,  
2096 and assessment results); the form of the review; or the degree of thoroughness needed. Throughout  
2097 these stages, reviews may be conducted internally by regional experts or they may be conducted by  
2098 independent reviewers as coordinated by the Center for Independent Experts (CIE). Most often, review  
2099 panels consist of a range of expertise including experts with regional knowledge and independent  
2100 experts selected through the CIE process. NOAA Fisheries' Office of Science and Technology administers  
2101 a contract for the CIE process but the deliverables of the CIE are handled independently. The CIE process  
2102 autonomously selects highly qualified peer reviewers, and this rigorous CIE peer review process is most  
2103 often used to evaluate benchmark assessments, emerging methods and science, or other potentially  
2104 controversial topics (e.g., biological opinions or recovery plans). Typically, CIE reviews are conducted in  
2105 person, but "desktop" reviews are also conducted when time and expenses need to be minimized, and  
2106 the limitations of a remotely conducted review are acceptable.

2107

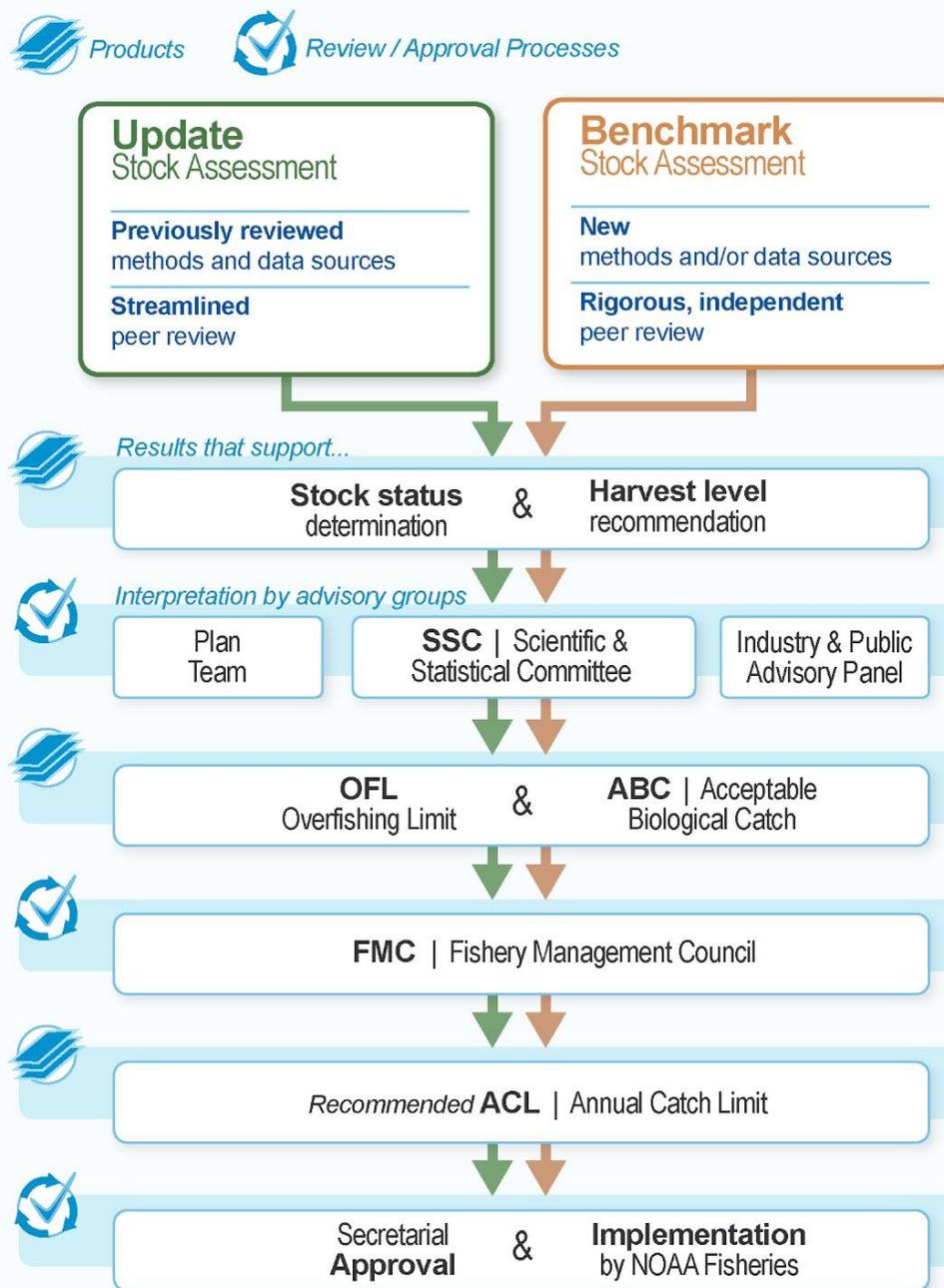
2108 The decision to establish a peer review, according to MSA section 302(g)(1)(E), is made jointly by the  
2109 Secretary of NOAA Fisheries and a regional council (NOAA, 2016; NOAA 2013). Therefore, the scope of  
2110 the review as defined by the review terms of reference (ToR) is established jointly among the pertinent  
2111 NOAA Fisheries science center and relevant council(s). Accordingly, councils and science centers are  
2112 given discretion to determine the form of peer review used for each stock assessment. For example, a  
2113 science center and the relevant council(s) may determine the form of review needed (e.g., panel or desk  
2114 review), establish the ToR for the review, and request the combination of expertise required, and  
2115 whether independent CIE reviewers will participate on the review panel. Each regional peer review  
2116 process incorporates this partnership among the science center and its respective council(s), and each  
2117 process complies with the NS2 Guidelines (NOAA, 2016).

2118

2119 The overall review process and the NS2 guidelines provide sufficient flexibility for the science centers  
2120 and their respective councils to determine when a peer review is needed, the form of review, and the  
2121 degree of rigor needed in the peer review. However, these decisions must also consider the need to  
2122 maintain a relatively high rate of completion of stock assessments to support timely management  
2123 decisions. To meet this need, rigorous peer reviews should be reserved for products such as benchmark

2124 assessments, emerging methods, or potentially controversial topics (e.g., biological opinions and  
2125 recovery plans). For these products, review panels are often balanced with both regional and  
2126 independent perspectives in the review process, and stock assessments are often subject to a series of  
2127 reviews involving NOAA Fisheries, SSCs, and external CIE review before the scientific information (e.g.,  
2128 SAFE report and peer review reports) is sent to the council's SSC advisory panel for its evaluation and  
2129 recommendations. Other reviews, such as routine update assessments, do not require a high degree of  
2130 independence, allowing for a more streamlined review process by regional experts and the council's  
2131 SSC. NS2 Guidelines provide clarification that participation by the SSC in the peer review process is  
2132 acceptable as long as their participation is compliant with the peer review standards and does not  
2133 interfere with their primary role of providing an evaluation and recommendations to their council.  
2134

## NOAA Fisheries Generic Stock Assessment to Management Process



2135  
2136 **Figure 6.1.** Generic overview of the process from a draft stock assessment to management decisions,  
2137 including independent review, advisory bodies, council decisions, and final approval by NOAA Fisheries.  
2138 While fishery management councils are responsible for recommending annual catch limits, NOAA  
2139 Fisheries determines stock status for federally managed stocks and this action occurs in parallel to the

2140 process depicted in this figure. (Note: This figure does not provide a detailed representation of each  
2141 regional process.)

2142  
2143 Overall, NOAA Fisheries' stock assessments are subject to appropriate levels of peer review before they  
2144 are used as a basis for fishery management decisions. Figure 6.1 provides a generic representation of  
2145 the process by which a stock assessment supports fishery management and is used to develop and  
2146 implement catch limits. The details of the actual regional peer review processes vary across regions and  
2147 do not strictly adhere to Figure 6.1. For federally managed (and certain interstate commission-managed  
2148 stocks), the regional review processes are managed under regional entities, such as Southeast Data  
2149 Assessment and Review (SEDAR), the Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee  
2150 (SAW/SARC), Stock Assessment Review (STAR), the Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR),  
2151 and the North Pacific Plan Team stock assessment review process. Fishery Management Councils, in  
2152 partnership with the science centers, use these regional processes in combination with their internal  
2153 reviews and the independent CIE reviews. In all cases, review meetings are announced publicly and open  
2154 to the public.

2155

### 2156 **6.3. Regional stock assessment review processes**

2157

2158 Each current regional review process is described briefly in the following sections and compared in Table  
2159 6.1. Although these processes encompass many federally managed stocks, NOAA Fisheries participates  
2160 in a variety of other stock assessment review processes, particularly for stocks managed under  
2161 transboundary and international agreements (i.e., authorities other than the MSA). Because these  
2162 processes are quite diverse, and typically established through international partnerships, this section  
2163 focuses on the review processes specific to federally managed stocks.

2164

#### 2165 **6.3.1. Southeast Data, Assessment, and Review (SEDAR)**

2166

2167 The SEDAR process was jointly established in 2002 by the NOAA Fisheries' Southeast Fisheries Center  
2168 (SEFSC) and Southeast Regional Office (SERO), Southeast Atlantic Fishery Management Council (SAFMC),  
2169 Gulf of Mexico Fishery Management Council (GMFMC), and Caribbean Fishery Management Council  
2170 (CFMC). The SEDAR process has improved the quality and transparency of fishery stock assessments in  
2171 the Atlantic, Gulf of Mexico, and U.S. Caribbean regions. The SEDAR process also works in partnership  
2172 with the Atlantic and Gulf States Marine Fisheries Commissions. The SEDAR Steering Committee, which  
2173 consists of members from the SEFSC, councils, and Atlantic and Gulf States Marine Fisheries  
2174 Commissions, determines the stocks that will be assessed and reviewed in a given year. Many stocks are  
2175 assessed on a 3- to 5-year cycle, although higher priority stocks may be assessed more frequently. The  
2176 SEDAR Steering Committee also determines the scope for each stock assessment (such as standard,  
2177 benchmark, and update assessment). Stock assessment ToR are developed and reviewed by SSCs and  
2178 SEFSC analytical staff prior to finalization, ensuring the ToR are appropriate for the species assessed.

2179

2180 The SEDAR process is organized around a series of workshops. In data workshops, datasets are  
2181 documented, analyzed, and reviewed, and data for conducting assessment analyses are compiled. In  
2182 assessment workshops, quantitative population analyses are developed and refined and stock  
2183 assessment parameters are estimated. Finally, in review workshops, a panel of independent experts  
2184 reviews the data and assessment analyses and recommends the most appropriate values of critical  
2185 population and management quantities. The review workshops typically include a panel composed of  
2186 CIE reviewers as well as council SSC appointees. The process takes approximately 6 to 9 months for a  
2187 benchmark assessment and 3 to 5 months for an update. Current staffing levels at the SEFSC allow a  
2188 total of five to seven SEDAR benchmark assessments per year in across the Gulf of Mexico, Atlantic, and  
2189 U.S. Caribbean regions. Additional assessments are then possible if they are conducted as updates. All  
2190 SEDAR workshops are open to the public, and SEDAR emphasizes constituent and stakeholder  
2191 participation in assessment development, transparency in the assessment process, and a rigorous and  
2192 independent scientific review of completed stock assessments. The relatively elaborate review process  
2193 implemented by SEDAR, a high level of transparency at each step, and a typical need for compiling data  
2194 from a wide variety of sources in the Southeast region creates several bottlenecks that limit the number  
2195 of assessments produced in the Southeast.

2196

### 2197 **6.3.2. Stock Assessment Workshop/Stock Assessment Review Committee (SAW/SARC)**

2198

2199 Beginning in 1985, the SAW/SARC process was jointly established by the NOAA Fisheries' Northeast  
2200 Fisheries Science Center (NEFSC), Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries Office (GARFO), New England  
2201 Fishery Management Council (NEFMC), Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management Council (MAFMC), and  
2202 Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission (ASMFC). The SAW is a formal protocol designed to prepare  
2203 and review assessments of fish and invertebrate stocks in the offshore U.S. waters of the northwest  
2204 Atlantic, and facilitates federally led stock assessments for the New England and Mid-Atlantic Fishery  
2205 Management Councils as well as state-led assessments for the Atlantic States Maine Fisheries  
2206 Commission. Within the SAW, assessments are peer reviewed by an independent panel of stock  
2207 assessment experts called the Stock Assessment Review Committee (SARC). The SAW/SARC process is  
2208 overseen by the Northeast Regional Coordinating Council (NRCC), which includes directors and chairs of  
2209 leading partner organizations. These committee members are responsible for developing a 2-year  
2210 schedule for stock assessments and helping to develop and approve the stock assessment ToR with the  
2211 councils and their SSCs. The SAW/SARC was primarily established for benchmark stock assessments, but  
2212 other efforts such as update assessments, operational assessments, and data-limited evaluations are  
2213 also facilitated.

2214

2215 The SAW/SARC process includes a series of meetings that are fully open to the public. There are industry  
2216 meetings, data meetings, model meetings, and finally peer review meetings where the SARC is asked to  
2217 determine the adequacy of the assessments in providing a scientific basis for management. The SARC  
2218 panel may accept or reject an assessment, and each SARC panelist provides a written review  
2219 approximately 5 weeks after the peer review meeting. The panel also provides an overall written

2220 summary of the proceedings. There are approximately two SARC meetings per year and within each,  
2221 two or three stock assessments are typically reviewed. Additional assessments are conducted on stocks  
2222 in the northwest Atlantic, but these are reviewed through other processes, such as internally through  
2223 the council's SSC. Similar to SEDAR, the SAW/SARC process for benchmark assessments is relatively  
2224 time-intensive and therefore limits the number of assessments produced. However, to improve the  
2225 number of assessments conducted, the northeast region also produces update or "operational"  
2226 assessments that rely on the council's SSC to offer a more streamlined review.

2227

### 2228 **6.3.3. Stock Assessment Review (STAR)**

2229

2230 The STAR process was established in 1998 to provide peer review of the scientific information (primarily  
2231 stock assessments) used for management of Pacific groundfish and coastal midwater species. Thus, the  
2232 STAR process is coordinated by the Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC), NOAA Fisheries'  
2233 Northwest Fisheries Science Center (NWFSC), Southwest Fisheries Science Center (SWFSC), and West  
2234 Coast Region (WCR). The PFMC oversees the process and involves its standing advisory bodies,  
2235 particularly their SSC. Together, NOAA Fisheries and the PFMC consult with all interested parties to plan  
2236 and prepare the ToR and develop a calendar of events with a list of deliverables for final approval by the  
2237 council. NOAA Fisheries and the council share fiscal and logistical responsibilities and both strive to  
2238 ensure that there are no conflicts of interest in the STAR process.

2239

2240 STAR panels include a chair appointed from the relevant SSC subcommittee (i.e., groundfish or coastal  
2241 pelagic species) and three other experienced stock assessment analysts with knowledge of the specific  
2242 modeling approaches being reviewed. Of these three members, at least one is typically appointed from  
2243 the CIE and at least one should be familiar with west coast stock assessment practices. For groundfish,  
2244 an attempt is made to identify one reviewer who can consistently attend all STAR panel meetings in an  
2245 assessment cycle. Given these constraints, the pool of qualified technical reviewers is limited, and it can  
2246 be difficult to meet all conditions when staffing STAR panels. Groundfish STAR panel meetings occur  
2247 every 2 years, whereas reviews of Pacific sardine occur every 3 years and reviews of Pacific mackerel  
2248 every 4. The resulting "off years" allow time for conducting research and improving stock assessments.  
2249 Typically, three to five STAR panel meetings for groundfish are held during each assessment cycle ("on  
2250 year") and one meeting for a coastal pelagic species (either Pacific sardine or Pacific Mackerel). The  
2251 panels normally meet for 1 week, and the number of assessments reviewed per panel typically does not  
2252 exceed two, except in extraordinary circumstances when the SSC and NOAA Fisheries agree that it is  
2253 advisable, feasible, and necessary. For groundfish species, the SSC reviews the STAR panel report and  
2254 recommends whether an assessment should be further reviewed at the so-called "mop-up" panel  
2255 meeting, a meeting of the SSC's groundfish subcommittee that occurs after all of the STAR panels,  
2256 primarily to review rebuilding analyses for overfished stocks. If an assessment is found unacceptable for  
2257 use in managing coastal pelagic species, a full assessment would be conducted the following year. The  
2258 entire STAR process is fully transparent, and all documents and meetings are open to the public with  
2259 opportunity for public comment.

2260

2261 **6.3.4. Western Pacific Stock Assessment Review (WPSAR)**

2262

2263 The WPSAR process was established in 2010 to improve the quality and reliability of stock assessments  
2264 for fishery resources in the Pacific Islands region. This region encompasses a range of fisheries and  
2265 ecosystems, including the American Samoa Archipelago, Hawaii Archipelago, Mariana Archipelago,  
2266 Pacific Remote Island Areas, and Pacific pelagic stocks. The Western Pacific Regional Fishery  
2267 Management Council (WPRFMC), Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center (PIFSC), and Pacific Islands  
2268 Regional Office (PIRO) share responsibilities in implementing the WPSAR process. The WPRFMC, PIFSC,  
2269 and PIRO provide a coordinator to work together to oversee and facilitate the review process, with  
2270 direction from the WPSAR Steering Committee that consists of the directors (or their designees) of the  
2271 science center, regional office, and council. The three coordinators work under the direction of the  
2272 Steering Committee to plan and organize reviews, prepare ToR, and develop a schedule according to a  
2273 multi-year planning cycle. Fiscal and logistical responsibilities are shared among the science center,  
2274 regional office, and the council.

2275

2276 The WPSAR framework has been modified over time and currently uses two different approaches for  
2277 the review and acceptance of stock assessment research products in the Pacific Islands region. For  
2278 benchmark reviews, new stock assessment methods not previously used for management consideration  
2279 and any major changes to a previous assessment (beyond inclusion of additional years of data) will  
2280 undergo a panel review, most likely in person. This panel will have a chair who will also be a member of  
2281 the council's SSC, and all other panel members will be external independent experts who will provide a  
2282 review. For update reviews, where assessments have changed only by the addition of recent years of  
2283 data, one to three experts will provide a review, most likely by desktop. These experts may consist of all  
2284 PIFSC or SSC personnel. For any review, the WPSAR Steering Committee can decide to use CIE as the  
2285 review mechanism. Any in-person reviews are open to the public to encourage constituent/stakeholder  
2286 participation and ensure rigorous, transparent, and independent scientific review of completed  
2287 assessments.

2288

2289 **6.3.5. North Pacific Plan Team Stock Assessment Review Process**

2290

2291 A variety of stocks fall under the jurisdiction of the North Pacific Fishery Management Council (NPFMC),  
2292 including groundfish and invertebrates in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA), Bering Sea (BS), and the Aleutian  
2293 Islands (AI). NOAA Fisheries' Alaska Fisheries Science Center (AFSC) is responsible for stock assessments  
2294 for 22 species or species groups under the groundfish fishery management plan (FMP) for the Gulf of  
2295 Alaska (GOA) and approximately 26 species or species groups under the Bering Sea/Aleutian Islands  
2296 BS/AI Groundfish FMP. The Alaska Department of Fish and Game (ADF&G) is responsible for one stock  
2297 assessment in the GOA groundfish FMP. The AFSC and ADF&G share assessment responsibilities for the  
2298 10 species in the BS/AI King and Tanner Crab FMP, and the ADF&G has responsibility for assessing  
2299 scallops. The NPFMC, AFSC, Alaska Regional Office (AKRO), and the ADF&G collaborate on the

2300 preparation and conduct of the review of North Pacific stock assessments. The stock assessments and  
2301 reviews are guided by generic ToR<sup>19</sup> rather than ToR specific to particular stocks. The review process in  
2302 this region includes partnerships with federal and state agencies and academic institutions who  
2303 participate in the stock assessment review and advisory process, such as the Council's Plan Teams, SSC,  
2304 and Advisory Panel. Separate teams are appointed for the BSAI and GOA, comprising 12 members each.  
2305 The teams meet twice a year (3 ½ days in September and 5 days in November). They meet jointly for 1½  
2306 days on issues of common interest, including information related to ecosystems, economics,  
2307 management, research priorities, and so on. The teams meet separately to review survey data reports  
2308 and stock assessments. Their recommendations on the stock assessments, overfishing limits (OFLs), and  
2309 acceptable biological catch (ABC) levels are reviewed by the Council's SSC.

2310  
2311 The review process has evolved over the past 2 ½ decades to become more streamlined than most  
2312 regional processes. Essentially, all stocks managed by the NPFMC are evaluated and reviewed according  
2313 to the frequency of the scientific survey upon which the assessment is based. The groundfish trawl  
2314 survey in the Eastern Bering Sea (EBS) is conducted annually; therefore, most EBS stocks are assessed  
2315 each year. Groundfish trawl surveys in the Gulf of Alaska (GOA) and Aleutian Islands (AI) alternate years  
2316 (surveys in the GOA conducted during odd numbered years, and surveys in the AI during even numbered  
2317 years). Despite this general schedule, certain stocks (e.g., walleye pollock, Pacific cod, and Atka  
2318 mackerel) are assessed annually to prevent these groundfish fisheries from causing jeopardy of  
2319 extinction of Stellar sea lions or adverse modification of their critical habitat. A combined GOA/EBS/AI  
2320 assessment of sablefish occurs each year, timed with the annual frequency of the sablefish longline  
2321 survey in the GOA, and alternating surveys for EBS and AI in odd and even years, respectively..

2322  
2323 Typically, update assessments (termed "full assessments") are conducted for developing harvest advice  
2324 for the following 2 years. The 2-year cycle allows for the use of the most recent biological information in  
2325 the stock assessment while eliminating potential delays or gaps in setting the second year's limits. In the  
2326 off years, partial update assessments ("executive summaries") are performed to reevaluate the scientific  
2327 advice without conducting a full assessment. The stock assessment updates are compiled in a Stock  
2328 Assessment and Fishery Evaluation (SAFE) report. After review and revision, the draft SAFE reports are  
2329 released by the science center for pre-dissemination to the council's Plan Teams for review. Plan Teams  
2330 review the SAFE reports and make recommendations to the SSC. The SSC then reviews the SAFE reports  
2331 as well as the Plan Team recommendations and provides the NPFMC with an ABC and OFL  
2332 recommendation for each stock. The council provides public notice of the meetings of its Plan Teams  
2333 and SSC and when SAFE reviews are being conducted; procedures are in place to allow for public  
2334 comment at these meetings. Although routine updates are necessary for a streamlined annual  
2335 assessment and review cycle, recommendations for improving assessments are made and reviewed by  
2336 the SSC during the year to allow for improvements without requiring a more comprehensive review

---

<sup>19</sup> [http://www.npfmc.org/wp-content/PDFdocuments/membership/PlanTeam/Groundfish/GPT\\_TOR.pdf](http://www.npfmc.org/wp-content/PDFdocuments/membership/PlanTeam/Groundfish/GPT_TOR.pdf)

2337 process. However, in addition to the normal schedule of assessment updates and reviews, a separate  
2338 review schedule is maintained, with the goal of obtaining an independent CIE review of each stock  
2339 assessment about once every 5 years. These more involved reviews are scheduled so that they do not  
2340 affect the relatively efficient annual cycle.

2341  
2342 Table 6.1. Comparison of regional stock assessment and peer review processes used in the management  
2343 of U.S. fisheries.

|  | Peer review process                        |                 |                     |                            |  |
|--|--|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--|
|  | SEDAR                                      | SAW/SARC        | STAR                | WPSAR                      | North Pacific Plan Teams                     |
| <b>Year initiated</b>                  | 2002                                       | 1985            | 1998                | 2010                       | 1989   |
| <b>Region(s) covered</b>               | Southeast coast, Gulf of Mexico, Caribbean | Northeast coast | West coast          | Pacific Islands            | Gulf of Alaska, Bering Sea, Aleutian Islands |
| <b>Council(s) supported</b>            | SAFMC, GMFMC, CFMC                         | NEFMC, MAFMC    | PFMC                | WPFMC                      | NPFMC  |
| <b>Other entities supported</b>        | ASMFC, GSMFC, HMS Sharks                   | ASMFC           | -                   | -                          | -  |
| <b>Science center(s) participating</b> | SEFSC                                      | NEFSC           | NWFSC, SWFSC        | PIFSC                      | AFSC   |
| <b>Typical review panel</b>            | CIE and SSC                                | CIE and SSC     | SSC, CIE, and other | SSC, PIFSC, CIE, and other | SSC, CIE (roughly every 5 years per stock)   |

2344  
2345 **6.4. Quality assurance of stock assessments for partner organizations**  
2346

2347 The United States has interests in numerous fisheries, not just the federally managed stocks that fall  
2348 under the MSA. As a result, NOAA Fisheries contributes to assessments of many stocks managed by  
2349 partner organizations, such as interstate commissions, state agencies, tribal organizations, international  
2350 regional fishery management organizations (RFMOs), and organizations related to a variety of  
2351 international treaties and agreements (Figure 3.1). The processes by which these assessments are  
2352 reviewed are under the discretion of each partner organization. NOAA Fisheries works with these groups  
2353 to comply with their respective review processes, but the processes are not bound to MSA mandates. In

2354 some cases, CIE reviewers are used, and NOAA Fisheries helps to facilitate these reviews. Also, certain  
2355 partner organizations rely on the regional processes described in Sections 6.3.1 to 6.3.5. For example,  
2356 the Atlantic States Marine Fisheries Commission uses the SEDAR and SAW/SARC processes for many of  
2357 its stock assessments.

2358

## 2359 **6.5. Strengths and challenges**

2360

2361 NOAA Fisheries, the Fishery Management Councils, and many other partners and stakeholders ensure  
2362 that high-quality scientific advice (i.e., BSIA) is provided to fishery managers by strictly adhering to MSA  
2363 mandates and related guidance. The NS2 Guidelines of the MSA, which emphasize the importance of  
2364 peer review, have helped to build confidence and trust among managers and stakeholders that the BSIA  
2365 is used in the fishery management process. However, the peer review process presents strengths and  
2366 challenges that must be considered to meet the increasing demand to provide timely assessments for  
2367 management decisions. For this reason, more careful prioritization is needed when balancing reviews  
2368 that require a more rigorous a peer review process (e.g., CIE peer review) and reviews that can be  
2369 conducted in a more streamlined manner. Further, NOAA Fisheries facilitates and helps to improve stock  
2370 assessment peer reviews through partnerships with numerous management agencies that are not  
2371 governed by the MSA. Collectively, a substantial amount of attention is being dedicated toward quality  
2372 assurance for stock assessments. These efforts have improved the credibility of the fishery management  
2373 process and increased the quality and transparency of fishery management decisions. For federally  
2374 managed fisheries, these improvements have contributed to nearly eliminating overfishing, rebuilding  
2375 many important stocks, and ensuring the long-term sustainability of marine resources and resiliency of  
2376 fishing communities. However, many challenges and tradeoffs associated with the current assessment  
2377 review process remain that warrant consideration. The following list briefly describes these issues.

2378

- 2379 • **Comprehensive peer reviews create a bottleneck that affects the rate at which assessments**  
2380 **can be completed.**

2381 Conducting an exhaustive independent peer review of a stock assessment requires substantial  
2382 time, effort, and resources and should be used when appropriate. Thus, there is a tradeoff  
2383 between the level of rigor dedicated to reviews and the number of assessments that can be  
2384 conducted. The regional processes vary in how they prioritize assessment quantity versus review  
2385 thoroughness. For example, the NPFMC conducts internal reviews of many assessment updates  
2386 each year using council committees, whereas SEDAR coordinates fewer reviews that use a  
2387 comprehensive process, particularly for “benchmark” assessments, that relies on the CIE. The  
2388 actual review workshop organized by SEDAR lasts only 1 week, and that alone is not a  
2389 bottleneck in the assessment completion rate. However, the assessment process coordinated by  
2390 SEDAR for benchmark assessments involves multiple workshops (data, assessment, and review)  
2391 with public participation and review at each. This multi-step process does limit the number of  
2392 assessments completed in this region.

2393

2394 Whether the reviews are comprehensive and independent, internal and smaller scale, or some  
2395 combination of each, all current approaches comply with MSA mandates. Therefore, it is up to  
2396 the various regional partners to determine what is most needed for successful fishery  
2397 management in their region. Generally, comprehensive CIE reviews are not necessary when a  
2398 stock assessment is not substantially different from an assessment that was previously deemed  
2399 sufficient for management purposes (for a particular stock). A desktop CIE review is available  
2400 when there is a need for fully independent peer review and a desire to minimize time and  
2401 expenses dedicated to the review. However, desktop reviews can be challenging for reviewers  
2402 to fully understand the scope and context of the review. Further, due to strict conflict of interest  
2403 regulations and limited availability of independent CIE experts, considerable lead time is  
2404 required for contracting and arranging travel for CIE reviewers (approximately 80% tend to be  
2405 foreign nationals). Therefore, more rigorous reviews that require a high degree of independence  
2406 (i.e., panel review with CIE reviewers) should be used sparingly. For example, these reviews  
2407 could be reserved for benchmark assessments that are substantially different from a stock's  
2408 previous assessment, assessments that include new or emerging methods, or for scientific  
2409 information on potentially controversial issues.

2410

2411 • **Fully independent reviews may not always provide the best evaluation of the science.**

2412 NS2 provides guidance on balancing the perspectives of peer reviewers and the varying degree  
2413 of independence needed for a review. Although the CIE tends to provide the highest degree of  
2414 independence, there are drawbacks to using a CIE panel in addition to increased cost and time.  
2415 Reviewers with a higher degree of independence (e.g., CIE reviewers) most often have little to  
2416 no prior experience with the regional ecosystem or stock being assessed, and in certain  
2417 instances, this might result in erroneous interpretation of the information under review due to  
2418 the lack of familiarity with regional issues. Balancing a panel of reviewers with regional expertise  
2419 may have benefits in this regard. Given variation in familiarity and the limited pool of CIE  
2420 panelists, there also can be a lack of consistency across reviews. This inconsistency may cause  
2421 some researchers to feel that the nature of the criticisms and potentially the rejection or  
2422 acceptance of a particular assessment is driven more by the composition of the review panel  
2423 than the quality of the science. This perception can create instability in the management  
2424 process. The STAR process addresses this inconsistency by using a primary reviewer who  
2425 participates in all its panel reviews during each review cycle (as well as reviewers with regional  
2426 expertise such as SSC members).

2427

2428 • **There is a need for consistent documentation and transparent results in the peer review  
2429 process.**

2430 Although the stock assessment peer review process offers a high degree of transparency and  
2431 provides ample opportunity for stakeholder engagement, further improvements in the  
2432 consistency and transparency can be made regarding the information used in the peer review  
2433 process (e.g., SAFE reports) and the peer review results. All meetings are open to the public, and

2434 relevant documents, including assessment and reviewer reports, are generally provided and  
2435 made available on publicly accessible websites. The CIE peer review reports are also made  
2436 publicly available. However, there are instances where it is unclear in the final stock assessment  
2437 report just how the peer review influenced the final product and improved the overall  
2438 management advice. Because there is not a standard format across regions for reporting the  
2439 conclusions of the review panel—and what, if any, adjustments or additional analyses were  
2440 performed to address reviewer comments—this information can be difficult to locate or  
2441 inconsistently reported. When stakeholders cannot find this information, they may perceive the  
2442 process as less transparent than intended.

2443

2444 • **Well-defined ToR are critical for successful stock assessment reviews.**

2445 Establishing well-defined ToR can provide an appropriate scope for the review, define  
2446 appropriate levels of expertise and independence for reviewers, ensure that reviewers focus on  
2447 the key elements of the assessment, and describe how to document and respond to reviewer  
2448 comments. Thus, the ToR for each regional peer review process and CIE review are established  
2449 before the peer review is conducted (NOAA, 2016). To maintain successful peer review  
2450 processes, improvements may be needed to ensure that future reviews are conducted  
2451 appropriately and are most beneficial to the fishery management process. For this reason, it is  
2452 beneficial for the science centers and their respective councils to jointly establish the ToR. In  
2453 certain instances, reviewers have focused on aspects of the assessment that are less critical to  
2454 ensuring high-quality advice. For example, reviewers may be tempted to focus on reviewing  
2455 previously established methods, or previously reviewed data sets, rather than the way in which  
2456 assessment methods were applied given the available data. Also, in some cases the number of  
2457 additional analyses that can be requested by reviewers is unlimited. Issues such as these can  
2458 result in a burdensome review process that may not improve the resulting scientific advice. The  
2459 success of the review also depends on the chair who serves in the impartial facilitation of a  
2460 panel review based on the ToR.

2461

2462 • **Externally provided stock assessments must be subject to the regional peer review process.**

2463 On occasion, entities other than NOAA Fisheries conduct assessments of federally managed  
2464 stocks. These assessments may be well integrated into the management process or outside  
2465 normal procedures. Typically, external assessments are commissioned by a stakeholder either to  
2466 fill a data gap that is not being addressed or to provide an alternative perspective in an ongoing  
2467 assessment. External assessments can be helpful when they provide advice for stocks that  
2468 cannot be assessed in a timely fashion, thereby assisting with the assessment workload, or when  
2469 they contribute additional analyses for consideration in an ongoing assessment. However,  
2470 external assessments can also be disruptive, especially when they are provided late in the  
2471 management process or without sufficient documentation to critically evaluate the approach. In  
2472 these cases, the assessment tends to compete or conflict with the federal stock assessment  
2473 without being subject to an equivalent level of peer review. Establishing well-defined ToR for

2474 peer review of externally provided stock assessments, as described earlier, helps to mitigate  
2475 some potential concerns. Unless the alternative analyses are contributed early in the  
2476 assessment process and included in the peer review, these analyses should not have a strong  
2477 influence on management decisions. As the contribution of external assessments continues to  
2478 increase, many councils have developed or are developing protocols for including these  
2479 assessments in the management process.

2480

2481 Although current approaches to stock assessment quality assurance address MSA mandates and result  
2482 in high-quality scientific advice being provided to managers, there is room for improvement as discussed  
2483 earlier, and recommendations for addressing these issues are provided in Section III. In particular,  
2484 Chapter 10 describes a stock assessment process that strives to be timely and efficient while also  
2485 maintaining thoroughness and transparency. These improvements rely on an objective approach to  
2486 stock assessment prioritization that will optimize the completion rates of assessments by determining  
2487 which stocks need assessments and the level at which those assessments should be conducted.

2488 ***References***

2489 Office of Management and Budget (OMB). 2004. Final Information Quality Bulletin for Peer Review,  
2490 Memorandum M-05-03, 45 p.

2491

2492 NOAA. 2016. Magnuson-Stevens Act Provisions, Federal Register vol. 81, no. 158, 81 FR 54561, p.  
2493 54561–54564.

2494

2495 NOAA. 2013. Magnuson-Stevens Act Provisions, Federal Register, vol. 78, no. 139, 73 FR 54132, p.  
2496 43066-43090.

2497

2498 **Chapter 7—An Introduction to the Future of NOAA Fisheries'**  
2499 **Stock Assessments**

2500 **Chapter highlights:**

- 2501 • **Three primary objectives make up NOAA Fisheries' next generation stock assessment (NGSA)**  
2502 **enterprise:**
  - 2503 1. **Expand the scope of many stock assessments and support harvest policies that are**  
2504 **more holistic and ecosystem-linked following a strategic approach that makes best use**  
2505 **of available resources.**
  - 2506 2. **Use innovative science and technological advancements to improve assessments and**  
2507 **establish robust harvest policies to manage stocks between assessments.**
  - 2508 3. **Create a more timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment process that prioritizes**  
2509 **stock-specific goals and objectives.**

2510 **7.1. Summary of challenges and the need for improvement**

2511 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise faces numerous demands from federal operations, fishery  
2512 managers, and interested parties. There are conflicting requests to make stock assessments simpler,  
2513 more comprehensive, based on better data, ecosystem-linked, more transparent to affected parties,  
2514 prioritized, updated using the latest data and model advancements, quicker to produce, and other  
2515 demands. Many aspects of these demands are difficult to satisfy and some are mutually exclusive, as  
2516 described in the following examples:

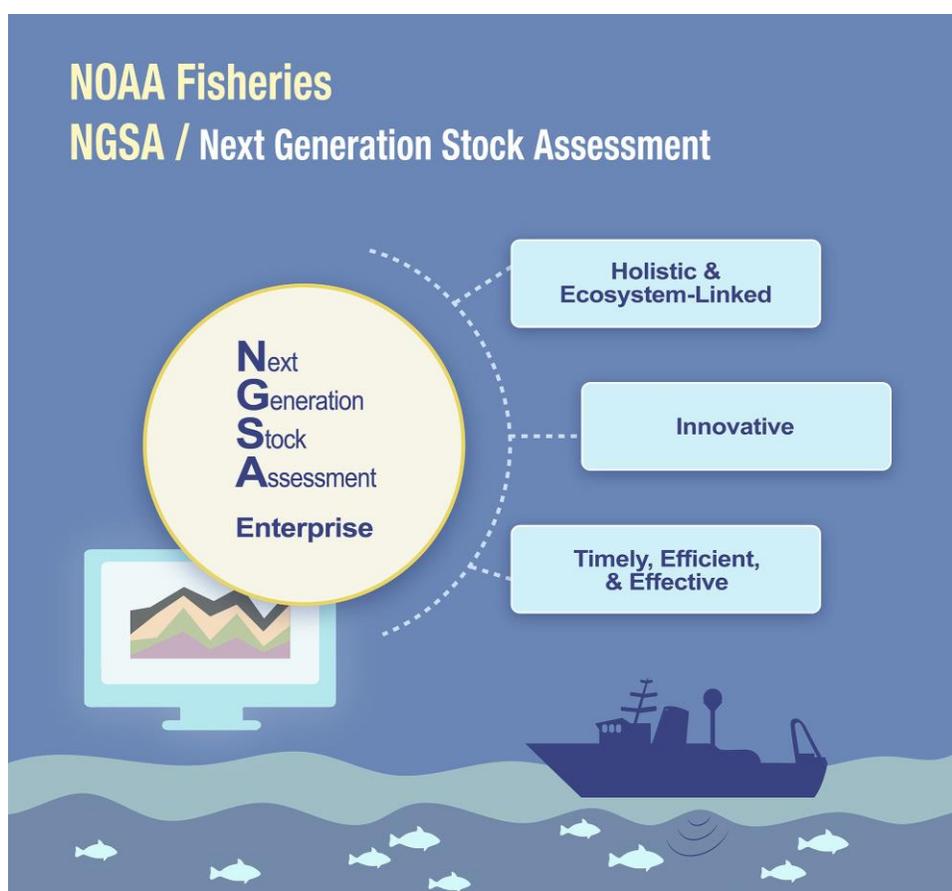
- 2517 • Assessments could be simpler if they had access to reliable, basic data streams regarding the  
2518 abundance of fish stocks. Much of the complexity of assessments is due to the advanced  
2519 statistical efforts used to overcome various shortcomings in the data.
- 2520 • Assessments could be updated more quickly if they used standardized, streamlined data  
2521 systems and standard modeling methods. Improvements to assessment data and models could  
2522 then be made by conducting research outside the normal management process, rather than  
2523 attempting to develop new operational methods during a constrained management process.
- 2524 • Assessments could be more comprehensive given that data and procedures to build in broader  
2525 system-level mechanisms are available. Most assessments incorporate environmental and  
2526 ecosystem changes indirectly and without including the actual mechanism driving the changes;  
2527 hence, they have very little ability to project changes in future stock conditions that may occur  
2528 as a result of future environmental and ecosystem changes.
- 2529 • The effort to include all possible data in an assessment expands the assessment's complexity,  
2530 obscures transparency, and reduces efficiency in the process because all data in an assessment  
2531 require proper documentation, analysis, and review. Thus, this reduced efficiency is  
2532 compounded by the preference for full transparency and comprehensive public review.

2533 The NGSAs framework is designed as a roadmap to address and balance the various demands on the  
2534 stock assessment enterprise. There are three main themes to this framework (Figure 7.1):

- 2535 a. Expanding the scope of stock assessments to be more holistic and ecosystem-linked  
2536 (Chapter 8)
- 2537 b. Using innovative science and advanced technologies to improve data and analytical  
2538 methods (Chapter 9)
- 2539 c. Establishing a timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment process (Chapter 10)

2540

2541 **Figure 7.1.** The three primary objectives that comprise NOAA Fisheries’ NGSAs.



2542

## 2543 **7.2. Holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments**

2544 Today, fishery assessments are mainly designed to analyze a dynamic system in which fishing is the  
2545 dominant force and ecosystem factors produce random changes that can be dealt with statistically. This  
2546 approach has successfully guided fishery management toward preventing overfishing and rebuilding  
2547 depleted fish stocks, but it lacks the ability to provide advice that directly accounts for expected changes  
2548 in ecosystems. When faced with ecosystems that are shifting into previously unobserved states, which

2549 is an expected result of climate change, the quasi-equilibrium paradigm of contemporary stock  
2550 assessments is ill-prepared to deal with shifts in stock productivity. Also, the single-species approach  
2551 fails to account for the cumulative effects of fishing on multiple stocks in a regional ecosystem. Further,  
2552 contemporary assessments do not account for socioeconomic drivers. Although fishery managers  
2553 certainly address socioeconomic considerations when setting catch limits, this information may also be  
2554 useful in configuring the sub-models of fishery dynamics within assessments.

2555 Assessments can provide more accurate and comprehensive advice if they expand their scope. However,  
2556 it is important to consider potential tradeoffs between expanding the scope of an assessment and the  
2557 degree of uncertainty around assessment results. These expansions should be thoroughly vetted by  
2558 conducting thoughtful research that facilitates the development and evaluation of expanded methods.  
2559 There is a consequence to expanding assessments within the operational assessment process, because  
2560 additional data sets can mean additional uncertainty that affects the final assessment results. Moreover,  
2561 an expanded assessment scope may require increased resources to maintain the additional data inputs.  
2562 Nevertheless, expansions should be routinely considered, and a prioritized approach should be used to  
2563 determine which stock assessments should expand in scope and how expansive those assessments  
2564 should be. Stock assessments should not necessarily expand to be as inclusive as Integrated Ecosystem  
2565 Assessments,<sup>20</sup> which address all ocean uses in an ecosystem and take a much broader look at multiple  
2566 forcing factors on an ecosystem and at multiple services provided by that ecosystem. However, stock  
2567 assessments do serve a function within ecosystem-based fishery management (EBFM) by taking an  
2568 ecosystem approach to fishery management to the extent feasible. For instance, assessments can  
2569 incorporate ecosystem drivers of dynamic processes in the assessment model. Also, stock assessments  
2570 provide important information regarding changes in major ecosystem components and processes, so  
2571 these products are useful in the development of system-level advice. Chapter 8 provides a broader  
2572 discussion and clearer pathway to achieving more holistic and ecosystem-linked stock assessments.

### 2573 **7.3. Innovative science**

2574 In general, stock assessments need to produce results with higher accuracy and precision. One way to  
2575 achieve this goal is to strive for more highly calibrated data; that is, to “fine tune” a data series so it  
2576 better represents true dynamics. This fine-tuning can be achieved through data calibration experiments,  
2577 where more complete evaluations of certain assessment inputs are conducted so that the full data  
2578 series of those inputs can then be adjusted to better reflect true dynamics over time. This approach may  
2579 substantially improve assessments, such as those conducted with relatively simple assessment models  
2580 that incorporate only the total catch history over time, and one or more time series of an indicator of  
2581 stock abundance (see Table 5.1—Aggregate biomass dynamics models). These models are effective only  
2582 if input data accurately capture stock and fishery dynamics, and when there is contrast in the data (i.e.,  
2583 high and low levels of fishing and abundance over time). In many cases, stock abundance indicators do

---

<sup>20</sup> <http://www.noaa.gov/iea/>

2584 not perfectly represent stock dynamics, especially when they are based on fishery catch rates, which are  
2585 particularly difficult to calibrate over time. Even the absolute knowledge of total catch is challenged as  
2586 catch histories are being revisited using new approaches (recreational catches in particular), and as  
2587 there is increased awareness of illegal, unreported, and unregulated (IUU) fishing. Contrast in the data is  
2588 needed to understand how stocks respond to fishing and how they rebuild from low biomass levels.  
2589 However, today's successful fishery management achieves stability, so relatively little contrast is being  
2590 realized in recent time periods.

2591 Advanced assessment models (e.g., statistical catch-at-age, see Table 5.1) provide a more complete  
2592 description of the effects of fishing on a fish stock, but there are even more concerns about data  
2593 calibration in addition to those associated with simpler methods. Advanced assessments incorporate  
2594 information on individual growth and the sizes and ages represented in the catch to: 1) ascribe the catch  
2595 to the actual age ranges of fish that are affected by the fisheries; 2) account for year-to-year fluctuations  
2596 in body growth and the number of young fish entering the stock (i.e., recruitment); and 3) provide direct  
2597 evidence of the level of total mortality as represented by the rate of decline in the numbers of older fish.  
2598 With additional types of data, the assessment model contains more moving parts that interact and need  
2599 simultaneous adjustment (e.g., accurate age, length, maturity, and other biological data is important).  
2600 Further, these models also depend on external knowledge of the level of natural mortality and the  
2601 possibility that older fish are not as available to fisheries and surveys. Finally, whether simple or  
2602 advanced, all models are challenged by major shifts and high year-to-year fluctuations in fish  
2603 productivity.

2604 Given these challenges to the performance of modern assessment models, there is a clear need for  
2605 more direct calibration of assessment data and more research to better understand and describe fish  
2606 stock dynamics and the processes that drive those dynamics.

2607 Chapter 9 describes new scientific and technological developments that may help advance stock  
2608 assessments. In particular, there is a focus on achieving a higher calibration of stock abundance data, an  
2609 expansion of the data collection and data delivery systems, and utilization of new statistical and  
2610 mathematical modeling techniques. Collective investments in these promising areas could result in  
2611 measurable improvements in the scientific advice being provided to fishery managers.

#### 2612 **7.4.0 Timely, efficient, and effective stock assessment processes**

2613 To meet many of the increasing demands on NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment programs, there is a  
2614 need to improve efficiency in the stock assessment process. Although increased efficiency would result  
2615 in more timely advice, it is important that each assessment maintain an appropriate level of detail,  
2616 transparency, and review. Each stock assessment should be conducted at a prescribed frequency and  
2617 level (data and model richness) in a way that reduces as much as possible the time from data collection  
2618 to management adjustment and is sufficiently transparent so that stakeholders have a high level of trust  
2619 in the assessment results.

2620 A data-rich assessment that is timely and transparent and occurs for as many stocks as needed is a  
2621 substantial challenge. Fortunately, there are potential process-oriented changes that can help guide  
2622 NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment programs to best meet the demands associated with each stock. In  
2623 particular, NOAA can improve the tracking of the types of data being used in each assessment; can use  
2624 and expand the national stock assessment prioritization process to set goals for each stock; and can  
2625 evaluate current assessment levels relative to target assessment levels to help identify stock assessment  
2626 gaps and meet realistic expectations for each stock. Further, the process of conducting a stock  
2627 assessment can be more streamlined. However, this approach should follow a simplified operational  
2628 assessment track that relies on standard, reviewed, tested, and documented approaches to to generate  
2629 scientific advice for fishery managers. Improvements to assessment data and methods can then be  
2630 considered via a parallel research track that allows time for developing, testing, and reviewing new  
2631 approaches before they are applied in a management setting. The level of review along the operational  
2632 assessment track can be streamlined, allowing improvements to be fully vetted in the research track.  
2633 Finally, standardized and streamlined reporting templates can be used to improve transparency in  
2634 assessment results while reducing the time required to communicate those results. Chapter 10  
2635 describes proposed changes to the way stock assessments are tracked, conducted, and prioritized to  
2636 improve the timeliness, efficiency, and effectiveness of stock assessments.

2637

## 2638 **Chapter 8—Holistic and Ecosystem-Linked Stock Assessments**

### 2639 **Chapter highlights:**

- 2640 • **The stock assessment approach should routinely consider ecosystem and socioeconomic**  
2641 **drivers, and these drivers should be addressed as appropriate with a goal of improved**  
2642 **understanding of stock dynamics and improved management advice.**
- 2643 • **Stock assessment terms of reference (ToR), particularly those for research assessments that**  
2644 **intend to improve an assessment, should formally consider ecosystem and socioeconomic**  
2645 **information.**
- 2646 • **Stock assessments should include multidisciplinary teams and coordinated access to**  
2647 **ecosystem and socioeconomic reports and research.**
- 2648 • **A general decision process is provided to guide the consideration of ecosystem and**  
2649 **socioeconomic information in the stock assessment and fishery management process.**
- 2650 • **There is a need for advancing the decision process and developing comprehensive criteria for**  
2651 **determining the extent of qualitative and quantitative inclusion of ecosystem and**  
2652 **socioeconomic linkages into the stock assessment and management processes.**

### 2653 **8.1 Introduction**

2654 Fishery scientists, managers, and stakeholders increasingly want to expand the scope of stock  
2655 assessments to be informed by ecosystem drivers as well as the social and economic dynamics affecting  
2656 fisheries. Stock assessments tend to account for these factors by either assuming that their effects occur  
2657 at some constant average level over time, or to allow random variation in stock dynamics that is not  
2658 directly guided by specific ecosystem or socioeconomic mechanisms. In many cases, these approaches  
2659 are sufficient for achieving fishery management objectives; thus, it is not necessary to expand the scope  
2660 of all stock assessments. However, there are stocks for which ecosystem and/or socioeconomic  
2661 information may significantly improve the accuracy and precision of assessment results. For these  
2662 priority stocks, expansion of the assessments should be supported by research as well as observations  
2663 (e.g., ecosystem or socioeconomic data) available at scales appropriate for including in a stock  
2664 assessment model. In most cases, substantial resources are required to conduct the research and data  
2665 collection necessary to expand an assessment. Therefore, it is important that this work initially be  
2666 directed to address the highest priority cases, while simpler approaches to dealing with ecosystem and  
2667 socioeconomic factors can be explored for lower priority stocks.

2668 There is no reason to “force” ecosystem or socioeconomic drivers into stock assessments when there is  
2669 not clear evidence to support their inclusion. In fact, identifying drivers in such complex systems is very  
2670 challenging. The purpose of these expansions is to improve the assessment and account for the major  
2671 factors that drive productivity, but if there is not strong evidence for the expansion, the accuracy and  
2672 precision of the assessment results may actually decrease. Regardless of whether ecosystem or  
2673 socioeconomic information is included in the assessment, there are many options available to account

2674 for these additional drivers in fisheries management. In fact, evaluating ecosystem-level tradeoffs is a  
2675 core feature of ecosystem-based fisheries management (EBFM).<sup>21</sup> This evaluation may best be  
2676 accomplished through system-level simulation studies, such as management strategy evaluations  
2677 (MSEs), and not stock assessments. However, system-level MSEs rely upon stock assessment results, so  
2678 improved stock assessments remain fundamental to improving fisheries management. This chapter,  
2679 with chapter 10, provides the context and vision for expanding the scope of more stock assessments to  
2680 be linked to ecosystem and socioeconomic factors. Examples of stock assessments that incorporate  
2681 ecosystem linkages are presented to demonstrate how understanding and advice are improved.

## 2682 **8.2 Why stock assessments should be expanded**

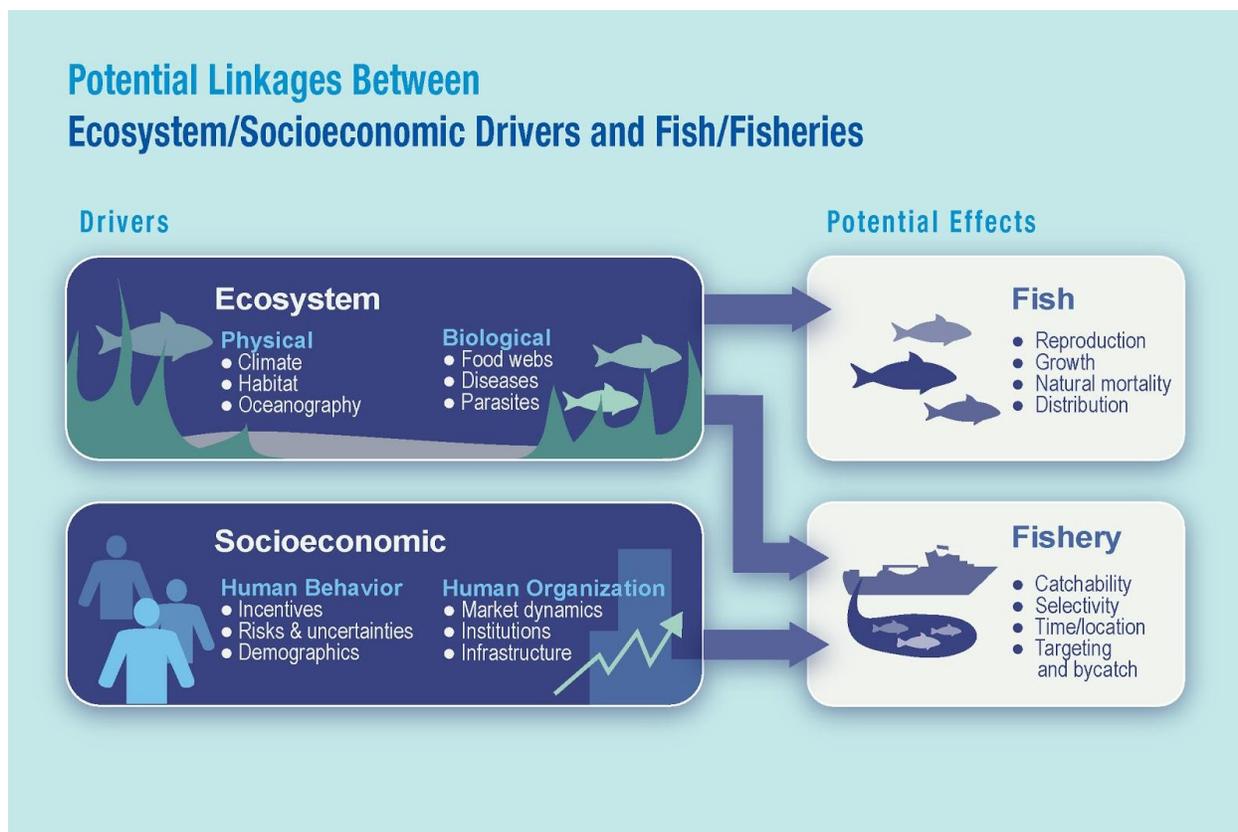
2683 The fishery stock assessment process uses biological reference points to support stock status  
2684 determinations and the application of harvest control rules to support the development of short-term  
2685 catch recommendations. In most cases, stock assessments use an historical analysis to determine  
2686 biological reference points and then project models based on historical data to determine future  
2687 catches. With climate change and other processes affecting marine ecosystems, a primary challenge  
2688 facing stock assessment science is how to establish biological reference points and apply harvest control  
2689 rules in complex environments that are experiencing constant change. In some cases, long-term  
2690 sustainability may be fully understood and achieved by directly incorporating ecosystem and  
2691 socioeconomic considerations into the process of determining stock status and developing catch  
2692 recommendations. In other cases, it may be sufficient to ensure that robust control rules are in place  
2693 and that they are adaptable to variations, such as those caused by climate change and ecosystem  
2694 variability.

2695 There are many features of an ecosystem and many socioeconomic factors that can affect both fish  
2696 stock productivity and fishery dynamics (Figure 8.1). For example, predation mortality alone can  
2697 considerably alter the status of a stock (Tyrrell et al., 2011), and changing thermal conditions impact the  
2698 distribution, growth, recruitment, and productivity of numerous stocks (Keyl and Wolff, 2008). In some  
2699 cases, these factors can be the dominant drivers of stock dynamics, especially as fishery management  
2700 has reduced fishing pressure to sustainable levels. Yet those considerations are not often included in  
2701 stock assessment models, assumed to be encapsulated in typical assessment model parameters, or  
2702 included as random variation. Thus, in many instances, better incorporating these ecosystem linkages  
2703 into the stock assessment process is warranted. Although assessment analysts are open and willing to  
2704 include additional factors into the assessments, there can be hesitation when relationships with stock  
2705 or fishery dynamics is not well understood, when data are not readily available in appropriate formats,  
2706 or when it is unclear how best to include the information in an assessment model. These challenges  
2707 emphasize the need for investing in research to support more holistic stock assessments.

---

<sup>21</sup> <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/index.html>

2708 **Figure 8.1.** Ecosystem and socioeconomic processes affecting fish and fisheries.



2709

2710 Part of the stock assessment process involves the use of diagnostic tools to evaluate how well a stock  
 2711 assessment model is configured. When assessment models exhibit poor diagnostics, one or more factors  
 2712 may be the cause. For example, an assumption about the population dynamics may be incorrect, a key  
 2713 factor may be missing from the model, or there may be unaddressed problems with the input data. If  
 2714 unresolved, poor diagnostics indicate that the model is not performing appropriately, and therefore the  
 2715 quality of the resulting scientific advice is questionable. Although models with questionable skill can still  
 2716 be used in a management context, the scientific uncertainty in the results should be characterized in a  
 2717 way that accounts for the poor model skill. Further, poor model diagnostics warrant a full investigation  
 2718 into the cause. In some cases, a simple fix within the assessment process can improve model  
 2719 diagnostics; in other cases, research studies are necessary to improve models outside the operational  
 2720 process (see Chapter 10 for more on research and operational assessment tracks). Regardless of the  
 2721 time and resources required for investigation, often poor model diagnostics are due to an assumption  
 2722 that some process is constant over time when in actuality the process changes appreciably. Thus, one  
 2723 common area that may improve model diagnostics is to more broadly explore ecosystem linkages in  
 2724 stock assessments models. However, because stock assessments are a simplification of very complex  
 2725 dynamics, the challenge lies in determining an appropriate level of linking assessments to the ecosystem  
 2726 without making the model too complex for the current goal.

### 2727 **8.3 When to expand stock assessments**

2728 Adding ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages to stock assessment models is not necessary in all cases.  
2729 Doing so may not improve model diagnostics, may not provide a better representation of stock or  
2730 ecosystem dynamics, and may not improve the management advice resulting from the modeling process  
2731 (e.g., Punt et al., 2013). Yet a systematic, structured, decision-criteria approach based on first principles  
2732 may help identify those situations that generally warrant closer examination of ecosystem or  
2733 socioeconomic considerations and potential inclusion of such linkages in the stock assessment process.

2734 Ideally, the decision to expand a stock assessment should be supported by thorough research into the  
2735 drivers affecting a stock's dynamics combined with a full investigation (e.g., management strategy  
2736 evaluation) of the costs and benefits of expanding the assessment. However, resources are not sufficient  
2737 to support such a methodical approach for all stocks. Thus, a standard, cross-cutting triage exercise is  
2738 needed to support the decision process for all stocks in a region. Conducting such exercises would not  
2739 only serve to improve single-species assessments, but would also accomplish essential steps in the  
2740 transition to EBFM. A relatively simple triage approach that integrates with the stock assessment  
2741 prioritization process is described in Chapter 10. Numerous other methods have been developed (Levin  
2742 et al., 2009; Link, 2010; Hobday et al., 2011) and examples have been applied in a fisheries context.  
2743 These approaches are often termed "ecological risk assessment" and they serve to identify the major  
2744 pressures and threats facing a group of species relative to their individual vulnerabilities to multiple  
2745 threats. Any number of these methods could be used to inform decisions about the scope of a stock  
2746 assessment as well as support the prioritization effort described in Chapter 10.

2747 A stock's natural mortality is one component of a stock assessment that is inherently connected to  
2748 ecosystem drivers. This value is challenging to estimate in stock assessments and is often estimated or  
2749 assumed by including as a fixed input to an assessment model. Although it is often accepted that natural  
2750 mortality varies over time and by age, it is common to assign it a constant value because there may not  
2751 be enough data available to estimate the change, and typically there are not obvious theoretical or  
2752 mechanistic linkages to ecological processes. In essence, natural mortality in a stock assessment model  
2753 represents an integration of numerous complex and interacting processes. However, natural mortality  
2754 of fishes that make up a substantial forage base for predators may be driven by the biomass of the key  
2755 predator species. These stocks in particular represent good candidates for additional examination and  
2756 exploration of predation mortality. Focusing on predator dynamics for forage species' natural mortality  
2757 is an example of a simple triage approach to identify one important ecological process for a subset of  
2758 stocks while eliminating species that do not experience significant predation mortality. The approach to  
2759 examining predation mortality for a given stock could vary (see Section 8.5), but knowing that it could be  
2760 an issue from the triage exercise would help highlight and prioritize the research.

2761 Natural mortality represents one of many aspects to consider when triaging stocks to determine which  
2762 assessments should be expanded to include ecosystem and/or socioeconomic factors. Figure 8.1  
2763 provides an overview of the many factors and effects that should be considered when constructing stock

2764 assessments. Although Figure 8.1 is a relatively simple diagram, there are numerous variations of  
2765 potential interactions between drivers and stock and fishery dynamics. From these triage exercises,  
2766 development of decision trees and recommended practices would naturally follow to delineate those  
2767 conditions when ecosystem and/or socioeconomic linkages are high priority and which factors should be  
2768 considered. Using criteria related to data availability, model diagnostics, model skill, model structure,  
2769 known or hypothesized mechanisms, key processes and dynamics, key model parameterizations, and  
2770 risk minimization would all be formulated to suggest particular approaches that could be used in the  
2771 stock assessment process. For instance, decisions on creating ecosystem linkages in stock assessments  
2772 are made in the context of several considerations:

- 2773 1. Based on the stock's value, status, and biology, is there an incentive to expand its  
2774 assessment to include ecosystem or socioeconomic factors?
- 2775 2. Is there evidence to suggest that stock or fishery dynamics are tightly coupled with some  
2776 variable ecosystem or socioeconomic feature?
- 2777 3. Are data available to model this relationship within the assessment framework?
- 2778 4. Can ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be incorporated in a way that maintains a  
2779 manageable assessment model?
- 2780 5. Can the relationship between stock, fishery, and ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be  
2781 forecasted with at least a moderate degree of certainty?

2782 Here, it is recommended that the stock assessment process include two steps:

- 2783 1. Use Figure 8.1 as a framework for conducting a simple qualitative evaluation of potential  
2784 ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages.
- 2785 2. Evaluate the results of the target setting process described in Chapter 10 in combination with  
2786 the previous considerations list to determine whether it is technically feasible, and worth the  
2787 effort, to expand a particular assessment.

2788 This systematic approach does not likely fit well into the operational stock assessment cycle, but  
2789 should be developed in a parallel research assessment track (see Chapter 10) that is designed to  
2790 improve operational assessments. Simply, research assessments should be guided by relatively  
2791 generic, nationally consistent, standing terms of reference that include attention to ecosystem and  
2792 socioeconomic considerations. The decision to expand assessments should not be based solely on  
2793 the detection of correlations between factors, but rather through thoughtful consideration at each  
2794 step and connection outlined earlier. Even if it is not deemed appropriate to expand an assessment  
2795 to include ecosystem or socioeconomic linkages, the process of evaluating stock and fishery  
2796 dynamics from a broader system-level perspective is generally beneficial. These evaluations should  
2797 be well-coordinated with the implementation of EBFM. In particular, management councils will be  
2798 developing more Fishery Ecosystem Plans (FEPs) and this process may provide a good opportunity to  
2799 assemble an interdisciplinary group that evaluates various ecosystem processes and their effects on

2800 fish and fisheries. Thus, the FEP development process could provide direct guidance for research  
2801 assessments.

## 2802 **8.4 How to expand stock assessments**

2803 The manner in which ecosystem and socioeconomic considerations can be included into the stock  
2804 assessment process is broad and varied. This information can be used to provide context for interpreting  
2805 stock assessment results and evaluating system-level effects of harvest recommendations; for  
2806 diagnosing issues with stock assessment models; for forming hypotheses of how stock assessments  
2807 could be improved; as leading indicators of potential change to prioritize assessment research and  
2808 activities; or for adjusting or scaling the harvest advice that derives from a stock assessment. Finally, the  
2809 information can be directly incorporated into stock assessment models as covariates and/or as new  
2810 model components that describe ecosystem or socioeconomic mechanisms. Table 8.1 expands upon the  
2811 processes described in Figure 8.1 to provide additional details on how stock assessments can include  
2812 ecosystem or socioeconomic information. Thus, there are several ways in which additional information  
2813 can be included in the stock assessment process, but what is appropriate for any given stock, ecosystem,  
2814 or management plan depends on several factors.

2815 At one end of this spectrum are purely qualitative approaches. These include the strategic use of  
2816 additional documents and information, including ecosystem status reports, ecosystem considerations  
2817 already in stock assessments, socioeconomic reports, and relevant research products. This  
2818 supplementary information can help shape management advice, such as guide the establishment of  
2819 harvest rates that are responsive to changing conditions rather than assume equilibrium conditions;  
2820 suggest the current productivity state of the environment, which is useful in guiding approaches to  
2821 forecasting catch advice; and highlight possible upcoming changes that may warrant a reconsideration  
2822 of future harvest levels or the frequency and approach by which assessments will be conducted. These  
2823 qualitative approaches represent simple acknowledgments that changing ecosystems and  
2824 socioeconomics affect fish and fisheries. They also fit well within current management approaches by  
2825 helping to communicate uncertainty in stock assessment results and providing guidance on how harvest  
2826 recommendations may be adjusted to account for this uncertainty.

2827 At the other end of the spectrum are more formalized, quantitative approaches. Quantitative  
2828 approaches generally seek to link stock assessment models to ecosystem and/or socioeconomic factors.  
2829 This task can be completed either by directly adjusting selected model parameters or structures, or by  
2830 providing an index that informs the model's estimation of particular parameters or trends in stock  
2831 dynamics. The qualitative and quantitative methods are not mutually exclusive, and neither is superior  
2832 to the other, but rather their appropriateness is situation specific.

2833 It is not necessary to force ecosystem or socioeconomic information into every stock assessment. The  
2834 important point in this chapter is that the stock assessment process should include a systematic  
2835 approach to considering how stocks and fisheries are affected by changes related to ecosystems and

2836 socioeconomics, and where/how appropriate, those considerations should be included. Chapter 10  
 2837 describes a simple approach to evaluating, across stocks, assessments that should be expanded to  
 2838 include ecosystem information. Then, Figure 8.1 combined with Table 8.1 and the considerations listed  
 2839 earlier, represent the generic thought process to determine how a stock’s assessment could be  
 2840 expanded/improved. This decision process needs to be tested and improved, but the guidance provided  
 2841 here and in Chapter 10 is designed as a starting point.

2842 **Table 8.1.** Level of ecosystem linkages and how they could inform the stock assessment process.  
 2843 1 = context within which stock assessment results can be better interpreted, 2 = forming  
 2844 hypotheses of how the stock assessment model could be altered, 3 = a leading indicator of  
 2845 potential change, 4 = changing stock assessment model parameters to account for ecosystem  
 2846 conditions, 5 = inclusion of ecosystem data as a covariate in a stock assessment model, 6 =  
 2847 inclusion of ecosystem data as a mechanistically linked, directly modeled process, 7 = to direct  
 2848 inclusion in development of harvest control rules.

|               |              | Pressures                               | Stock Assessment Factors  | Linkage Levels |
|---------------|--------------|---|---|----------------|
| Ecosystem     | Physical     | Habitat (pelagic, benthic)              | Distribution, abundance, selectivity, catchability, movement  | 1 through 6    |
|               |              | Climate (large-scale)                   | Distribution, maturity, growth, abundance, movement, consumption, reference points, projections, harvest control rules                  | 1 through 7    |
|               |              | Winds (speed, upwelling)                | Growth, abundance, catchability, recruitment, movement, projections   | 1 through 6    |
|               |              | Temperature/Salinity (surface, profile) | Distribution, maturity, growth, abundance, selectivity, catchability, recruitment, movement, consumption, reference points, projections | 1 through 6    |
|               |              | Nutrients (nitrate, ammonium, iron)     | Growth, recruitment, consumption  | 1 through 3    |
|               |              | Chemistry (acidification, hypoxia)      | Maturity, abundance, harvest control rules  | 1 through 3    |
|               |              | Oceanography (current, height)          | Distribution, growth, recruitment, projections  | 1 through 6    |
|               | Biological   | Plankton (phyto, zoo, micro)            | Recruitment   | 1 through 6    |
|               |              | Ichthyoplankton (eggs, larvae)          | Recruitment   | 1 through 6    |
|               |              | Fish (juvenile, adult, spawning)        | All Factors   | 1 through 7    |
|               |              | Diet (food web, competition)            | Natural mortality, growth, abundance, recruitment, reference points   | 1 through 7    |
|               |              | Stress (predators, parasite, disease)   | Natural mortality, reference points   | 1 through 6    |
|               |              |   |   |                |
| Socioeconomic | Behavior     | Incentive (food, job, tradition)        | Catch, abundance  | 1 through 2    |
|               |              | Bycatch (avoidance, retention)          | Distribution, catch, abundance, reference points, harvest control rules   | 1 through 7    |
|               |              | Social Impacts (non-catch, tourism)     | Catch, abundance  | 1 through 2, 7 |
|               |              | Risk & Uncertainty (investment)         | Harvest control rules   | 1 through 2, 7 |
|               |              | Demographics (fleet size, gear type)    | Catch, selectivity, catchability  | 1 through 7    |
|               | Organization | Market Dynamics (price)                 | Catch, selectivity  | 1 through 2, 7 |
|               |              | Institutions (councils, certification)  | Catch, selectivity  | 1 through 2, 7 |
|               |              | Infrastructure (docks, plants, ports)   | Catch, abundance, catchability  | 1 through 2    |
|               |              | Navigation/Shipping                     | Selectivity, catchability   | 1 through 2    |

2849

## 2850 **8.5. Multiple stocks in an ecosystem**

2851 In addition to expanding the scope of stock assessments by incorporating ecosystem or socioeconomic  
2852 data, assessments can also be expanded through the coordinated evaluation of their results. For  
2853 instance, the results from a collection of stock assessments within an ecosystem or fishing community  
2854 may be combined to understand how stock dynamics are related and how communities are affected by  
2855 variable harvests. This coordinated evaluation may facilitate the establishment of fishing levels across  
2856 multiple stocks to conserve ecosystem functioning while optimizing fishing opportunity. Such an  
2857 approach to fishery management is described in the revised NS1 Guidelines, which mention that harvest  
2858 limits can be estimated for a group of stocks and these aggregate reference points can be used to  
2859 optimize yield for the entire group. In fact, this approach is already in place in certain regions. For  
2860 instance, a 2-million ton system-level cap is imposed on groundfish stocks in the North Pacific Ocean  
2861 (Bering Sea-Aleutian Islands). This cap facilitates maximizing the catch of the most important stocks  
2862 while reducing catches of other stocks to sustain biomass in the system. Overall, the coordinated  
2863 evaluation of multiple stocks may enable the development of system or community-level harvest  
2864 policies. In other words, harvest policies that account for interacting stocks, total fish production in a  
2865 system, as well as cumulative or indirect effects of fishery or ecosystem dynamics. This system-level  
2866 approach is an important component of NOAA Fisheries' EBFM Road Map<sup>22</sup> and represents a critical  
2867 connection between fish population dynamics and ecosystem science. As described in the EBFM Road  
2868 Map, an appropriate place for these system-level approaches is within the regional Fishery Ecosystem  
2869 Plans.

2870 Evaluating stocks and their assessments at the ecosystem or community level provides additional  
2871 benefits beyond the establishment of coordinated harvest policies. By conducting multi-stock  
2872 evaluations, certain features of an ecosystem or set of fishing practices may be highlighted as important  
2873 drivers that affect multiple stocks simultaneously. For example, if a group of stocks exhibits a relatively  
2874 drastic change in abundance at a certain time, there may be many potential causes worth evaluating,  
2875 such as environmental shifts or changes in fishermen targeting behavior. It may then be efficient to  
2876 address these issues in a way that is most beneficial to the whole system. Other benefits of coordinated  
2877 evaluations relate to the assessment and management process. For instance, if issues arise, either with  
2878 the data, analyses, or other step in the process, then it will be apparent if those same issues apply to  
2879 multiple stocks. The issues may then be addressed so that they benefit the entire system/community.  
2880 Along those lines, a multi-stock evaluation also facilitates a system-level gap analysis. If certain gaps  
2881 apply to multiple stocks then there may be efficient ways to address those gaps and improve  
2882 assessments for many stocks.

## 2883 **8.6. Conclusions**

---

<sup>22</sup> <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/index.html>

2884 With changing ecosystems and complex socioeconomic factors driving stock and fishery dynamics, it is  
2885 important that the scope of stock assessments expands to support more holistic approaches to fishery  
2886 management. These expansions can occur by including ecosystem or socioeconomic factors in individual  
2887 stock assessments, or through the coordinated evaluation of single species assessments at the  
2888 ecosystem or community level. At a minimum, it is important that the potential drivers and decision  
2889 points discussed in this chapter be considered during the stock assessment process, potentially  
2890 facilitated through the development and implementation of FEPs. The ultimate goal of these  
2891 considerations is to improve assessments and the advice being provided to fishery managers in an  
2892 attempt to prevent overfishing while achieving optimum yield for fisheries. Given the strong connection  
2893 between system-level thinking and EBFM, this chapter emphasizes the fundamental connection  
2894 between single-species stock assessments and EBFM. Thus, improving assessments through expanding  
2895 their scope not only improves single species fisheries management, but is also important in achieving  
2896 EBFM.

### 2897 **References**

- 2898 Baker, J. D., E. A. Howell, and J. J. Polovina. 2012. Relative influence of climate variability and direct  
2899 anthropogenic impact on a sub-tropical Pacific top predator, the Hawaiian monk seal. *Mar. Ecol.*  
2900 *Prog. Ser.* 469:175–189. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps09987>
- 2901 Baker, J. D., J. J. Polovina, and E.A. Howell. 2007. Effect of variable oceanic productivity on the survival of  
2902 an upper trophic predator, the Hawaiian monk seal, *Monachus schauinslandi*. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*  
2903 346:277–283. <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps06968>
- 2904 Hobday, A. J., A. D. M. Smith, I. C. Stobutzki, C. Bulman, R. Daley, J. M. Dambacher, R. A. Deng, J.  
2905 Dowdney, M. Fuller, D. Furlani, S. P. Griffiths, D. Johnson, R. Kenyon, I. A. Knuckey, S. D. Ling, R.  
2906 Pitcher, K. J. Sainsbury, M. Sporcic, T. Smith, C. Turnbull, T. I. Walker, S. E. Wayte, H. Webb, A.  
2907 Williams, B. S. Wise, and S. Zhou. 2011. Ecological risk assessment for the effects of fishing. *Fish. Res.*  
2908 108(2–3):372–384. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2011.01.013>
- 2909 Keyl, F., and M. Wolff. 2008. Environmental variability and fisheries: what can models do? *Rev. Fish.*  
2910 *Biol. Fish.* 18:273. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11160-007-9075-5>
- 2911 Levin, P. S., M. J. Fogarty, S. A. Murawski, and D. Fluharty. 2009. Integrated ecosystem assessments:  
2912 developing the scientific basis for ecosystem-based management of the ocean. *PloS Biology*  
2913 7(1):e1000014. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pbio.1000014>
- 2914 Link, J. S. 2010. *Ecosystem-based fisheries management: confronting tradeoffs*, 224 p. Cambridge Univ.  
2915 Press, Cambridge, England.
- 2916 Polovina, J. J., E. Howell, D. R. Kobayashi, and M. P. Seki. 2001. The transition zone chlorophyll front, a  
2917 dynamic global feature defining migration and forage habitat for marine resources. *Prog. Oceanogr.*  
2918 49:469–483. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611\(01\)00036-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00036-2)

- 2919 Punt, A. E., T. A'mar, N. A. Bond, D. S. Butterworth, C. L. de Moor, J. A. A. De Oliveira, M. A. Haltuch, A. B.  
2920 Hollowed, and C. Szuwalski. 2013. Fisheries management under climate and environmental  
2921 uncertainty: control rules and performance simulation. ICES J. Mar. Sci.  
2922 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst057>
- 2923 Tyrrell, M. C., J. S. Link, and H. Moustahfid. 2011. The importance of including predation in fish  
2924 population models: implications for biological reference points. Fish. Res. 108:1–8.  
2925 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2010.12.025>
- 2926

## 2927 **Chapter 9—Innovative Science for Improving Stock** 2928 **Assessments**

### 2929 **Chapter highlights:**

- 2930 • **Changing systems and mixed-stock fisheries warrant development, testing, and**  
2931 **implementation of ecosystem-linked and multispecies assessment methods.**
- 2932 • **Strategic investments in data collection and statistical and analytical assessment methods are**  
2933 **needed to meet the demand for increasing the quantity and quality of stock assessments.**
- 2934 • **Investments in advanced sampling technologies should be guided by stock and ecosystem**  
2935 **assessment priorities, and should enhance NOAA's infrastructure with integrated survey and**  
2936 **ocean observation systems.**
- 2937 • **Advancing the research and development of advanced sampling technologies requires**  
2938 **partnerships among academic institutions, industry, and other agencies.**
- 2939 • **Calibration studies are necessary for enhancing ongoing data collection operations with new**  
2940 **technologies, particularly when attempting to generate direct estimates of stock abundance.**
- 2941 • **General modeling frameworks that facilitate ease of use, robust testing, community-level**  
2942 **development, modular applications, and best practices are needed.**
- 2943 • **Improved use of decision analysis tools and ensemble modeling techniques will better convey**  
2944 **uncertainty for risk analysis in fishery management decisions.**

2945

### 2946 **9.1. Introduction**

2947 Stock assessments are conducted via a multi-step interdisciplinary partnership (Chapter 1) to provide  
2948 reliable, complete, and transparent advice to fishery managers. Many of the fundamental scientific  
2949 achievements and evolution that form the basis for fisheries science and management today were  
2950 realized in the twentieth century (Quinn, 2003). Contemporary stock assessments build upon these early  
2951 accomplishments as well as new developments (Methot, 2009), thereby representing a synthesis of  
2952 scientific achievements within each step of the process: data collection and processing, stock  
2953 assessment modeling, and developing and communicating recommendations. Advancements in stock  
2954 assessment science have not only been achieved within the field of fisheries science, but  
2955 accomplishments in other disciplines are also being leveraged (e.g., mathematics and statistics,  
2956 computer technology and programming, ecology, advanced sampling technologies, sample design, and  
2957 risk management). Therefore, the stock assessments of today can benefit from data collected by a  
2958 variety of technologies and in accordance with sound statistical designs, access to advanced computing  
2959 power that facilitates the rapid execution of big data analysis using complex mathematical and statistical  
2960 algorithms, and sophisticated approaches to visualizing and interpreting risk and uncertainty associated  
2961 with a range of management scenarios.

2962 Despite the numerous advances in stock assessment science during the past century, meeting current  
2963 demands for an increased quality and quantity of assessments will require a stronger reliance on  
2964 innovative science and technology. Chapter 4 provided an overview of the current state of data  
2965 collection for fishery stock assessments, and Chapter 5 described the status of assessment models in  
2966 NOAA Fisheries. This chapter offers several potential improvements related to new, innovative science  
2967 that may apply to the entire stock assessment process. Many of the ideas in this chapter are not new,  
2968 but are already in varying stages of development, testing, and/or use. Although suggestions described in  
2969 this chapter could potentially improve stock assessments, they should not be adopted for all  
2970 assessments, but rather through a thoughtful and strategic decision process, because there may be  
2971 limited resources and/or tradeoffs to consider. These tradeoffs emphasize the overlapping and  
2972 integrated nature of the elements of the next generation stock assessment enterprise described  
2973 throughout Section 3. The following subsections provide detailed recommendations related to  
2974 innovative science to benefit the stock assessment process, and they should be considered along with  
2975 improvements to efficiency and prioritization (Chapter 10) and to expand the scope of stock  
2976 assessments (Chapter 8).

## 2977 **9.2. Innovations in data collection and processing**

2978 The reliability of stock assessment results is directly related to the quality of available data. In other  
2979 words, if data are not available, or if the information contained in the data is not informative with  
2980 regard to stock or fishery dynamics, then stock assessment results should be interpreted with caution.  
2981 Certainly, quantitatively characterizing the uncertainty in assessments became increasingly important  
2982 after the adoption of uncertainty-based buffers between the overfishing level and a recommended  
2983 catch level. Many of the recommendations in this section pertain to innovative science and technology  
2984 that may expand and improve the data collected for stock assessments. However, there is also a need  
2985 for recommendations and innovation related to the general processes and practices of data collection.  
2986 For instance, changes and investments in data collection operations must be made strategically;  
2987 therefore, a national group may be necessary to coordinate and prioritize those changes and  
2988 investments. Establishing such a group within NOAA Fisheries is recommended here to conduct strategic  
2989 planning for stock assessment data and to work with the gaps and recommendations resulting from the  
2990 stock assessment prioritization exercise (Chapter 10) as well as with other relevant national working  
2991 groups (e.g., advanced sampling technologies, stock assessment methods, and survey vessel  
2992 coordinators). Although regional experts have the best knowledge of data gaps for particular species,  
2993 changes in funding often occur nationally. Thus, a national group that is coordinated across regions and  
2994 connected with other national strategic efforts is ideal for conducting a comprehensive gap analysis of  
2995 stock assessment surveys to evaluate the sufficiency of sampling coverage and intensity across stocks,  
2996 and to determine where new technologies and other investments can be considered to address data  
2997 gaps. This group can coordinate across stock assessment data inputs with a goal of obtaining the  
2998 appropriate level of sampling for each stock, implemented with methodologies and technologies to  
2999 provide data for stock assessments in a way that best meets management objectives.

3000 **9.2.1 Fishery-independent data**

3001 As discussed in Chapter 4, fishery-independent data sources are important for understanding and  
3002 monitoring fish stocks and provide fundamental inputs to assessments. Thus, maintaining and  
3003 expanding (where necessary) NOAA's fish survey capabilities is crucial to improving stock assessments.  
3004 The ongoing work to ensure a sufficient and functioning NOAA fleet, charter vessel arrangements, well-  
3005 designed surveys, and integration of new technologies and ocean observing systems is necessary for  
3006 maintaining these important data streams.

3007 Opportunities for improving the data already being collected for stock assessments also exist. A primary  
3008 focus of fishery-independent surveys is to estimate a time series of stock abundance that serves as input  
3009 to the stock assessment model (Chapter 1). In most cases, abundance trends from surveys are relative;  
3010 that is, they capture proportional changes in stock size but not absolute measures of abundance each  
3011 year. The assessment models can infer absolute abundance from the trend information if the time series  
3012 trend is long enough to provide contrast (i.e., show declines when catch is high and increases when  
3013 catch is low). However, such contrast is not assured, and information on absolute stock abundance that  
3014 comes directly from the survey is beneficial and easily included in contemporary assessment models.  
3015 Obtaining measures of absolute biomass from surveys does not necessarily require new types of  
3016 surveys, but can be achieved through research on existing surveys. For instance, if the surveys are  
3017 calibrated to measure the proportion of the available biomass sampled (catchability) and the likelihood  
3018 of sampling fish of a given age (selectivity), then absolute abundance can be estimated. Therefore,  
3019 resources should be directed at research on survey catchability and selectivity to work toward better  
3020 survey calibration and facilitate estimates of absolute abundance for priority stocks whose assessments  
3021 would benefit most from this information (advanced sampling technologies [Section 9.2.3] may be  
3022 helpful in conducting this type of research). The potential for improving stock assessments with better  
3023 calibrated surveys is high, particularly in cases where other stock assessment data (e.g., catch and  
3024 biology) are limited or highly uncertain.

3025 Another issue affecting the quality of abundance data from stock assessment surveys is changing species  
3026 distributions. Many stocks are responding to climate variability and climate change by shifting their  
3027 distributions in a variety of ways (Nye et al., 2009; Pinsky et al., 2013). For surveys, particularly those  
3028 with fixed sampling-designs, these shifts may compromise the ability to estimate abundance trends,  
3029 particularly when stocks shift outside of the surveyed area. In other words, distribution shifts may cause  
3030 survey catchability to vary over time, yet it is often assumed to be constant when estimating abundance.  
3031 Thus, there is a relationship between species distributions and the recommendation calling for better  
3032 understanding of survey catchability. Part of that work will be related to researching species  
3033 distributions and habitat associations as related to survey designs. In some cases, it may be appropriate  
3034 to alter and/or expand survey designs so they track and respond to shifting distributions. Ocean  
3035 observation systems (autonomous and fixed platforms) are good options for supplementing the spatial  
3036 coverage of surveys without increasing ship time. In other cases, it may be sufficient to calibrate surveys

3037 with respect to climate so that annual catchability for a particular species can be characterized (Adams  
3038 et al., 2015).

### 3039 **9.2.2 Fishery-dependent data**

3040 Data collected from fisheries provide fundamental information for stock assessments on numerous  
3041 factors (e.g., total catch, fishing strategies, catch composition—species, ages, sizes, sexes, and bycatch  
3042 and discarding practices). Fishery catch rates are also occasionally analyzed to characterize changes in  
3043 stock abundance over time, commonly for stocks that do not have dedicated abundance surveys. As  
3044 described in Chapter 4, fishery-dependent abundance trends are necessary in certain scenarios, but  
3045 these catch rates are hard to validate as a good indicator of stock abundance and must be treated  
3046 carefully. Because many harvested stocks do not have dedicated surveys, it could be very beneficial to  
3047 partner with fisheries to obtain more reliable estimates of abundance. Where there is a gap in survey  
3048 coverage, and when funds are not available for establishing a scientific survey, the fisheries presence on  
3049 the water represents a great opportunity for collaboration. The recommendation here is to establish  
3050 more partnerships with the fishing industry and explore low-cost scientific work as part of normal fishing  
3051 operations where some subset of fishing activity is conducted according to a sampling design. Such  
3052 partnerships offer many benefits, such as filling critical data gaps, building stakeholder engagement and  
3053 trust, and improving assessments and management. Overall, this approach would be less involved than  
3054 surveys conducted with chartered fishing vessels but more standardized than the approaches currently  
3055 used to extract abundance trends from fishery catch rates. In cases where fisheries cannot conduct  
3056 scientific sampling, another option may be to impose a sampling design for a given stock and subsample  
3057 catch rates from fishermen’s logbook data according to that design. In this way, the fishery is retrofitted  
3058 (roughly) as a survey.

3059 Given that fisheries represent the primary sources of many key inputs to stock assessments, there is a  
3060 general need to optimize the ways in which fisheries are monitored. For instance, fishery observers  
3061 provide necessary information related to incidentally caught species (“bycatch”), catch composition, and  
3062 fishing practices for commercial fisheries, yet many fisheries have little or no observer coverage. For  
3063 recreational fisheries, phone, mail, and dockside surveys are typically used to generate estimates of  
3064 catch, effort, fishing strategies, and discards. These surveys will never provide complete accounting of  
3065 recreational catches, but in an effort to improve estimates for federally managed stocks, the Marine  
3066 Recreational Information Program (MRIP) recently optimized its statistical sampling design. Commercial  
3067 fishery observer programs, particularly in regions with limited observer coverage, may also consider  
3068 revising and expanding their sampling strategies. The ultimate goal is to provide accurate information  
3069 for stock assessment and management, but given limited resources in certain regions, the following  
3070 questions are of importance:

- 3071 • What is the effect of different levels of observer coverage?
- 3072 • How should observers be distributed over time, space, and across vessels in a fishery?
- 3073 • Which stocks are highest priorities for higher/lower observer coverage?

3074 Answers to these questions are important and may be best addressed in a management strategy  
3075 evaluation (MSE) context (Section 9.3.3), but they are central for optimizing the collection of critical  
3076 fishery-dependent data.

3077 Another recommendation to improve the collection and provision of fishery-dependent data for stock  
3078 assessments is through an increased use of electronic monitoring and electronic reporting (EM/ER).<sup>23</sup>  
3079 These electronic technologies allow fishermen to record their catches and fishing activities and make  
3080 that information available in near real-time. There are also platforms, such as video camera systems,  
3081 that can be used to monitor catches as they are brought onboard. Such systems could potentially offer  
3082 an option for a low-cost expansion of observer coverage, as well as for catch accounting in Alaska. These  
3083 technologies do not represent a viable replacement for observer programs, but they can be used  
3084 to enhance observer-collected data. NOAA Fisheries has already invested in research, development, and  
3085 testing of EM/ER, and a small number of fisheries have implemented these innovative approaches to  
3086 data collection and monitoring of commercial fisheries. In 2016, Congress appropriated \$7 million for  
3087 implementation of EM and ER in U.S. fisheries; these funds are expected to continue. Overall, these  
3088 technologies may offer improvements to fishery-dependent data collection; therefore, the use of EM/ER  
3089 will continue to be explored.

3090 This section calls for increases in fishery-dependent data collection, but there are various costs to  
3091 consider in doing so. A primary expense is the cost associated with expanded operations (i.e., new  
3092 equipment and staff time for data collection and program management). However, there are added  
3093 costs related to processing and analyzing more data. These costs cannot be overlooked, because in  
3094 many cases, resource availability for data processing and preparation is a major factor that constrains  
3095 the throughput of assessments. This issue is addressed in more detail in Section 9.2.5.

### 3096 **9.2.3 New data types**

3097 Chapter 8 described the need and approach for expanding the scope of stock assessments to consider  
3098 the effects and inclusion of ecosystem and socioeconomic impacts. As consideration of these effects  
3099 becomes more common in stock assessments, a broader collection of supporting ecosystem and  
3100 socioeconomic data will become necessary. Not only will these data be important for the assessments  
3101 that expand in scope, but as NOAA Fisheries progresses toward ecosystem-based fisheries management  
3102 (EBFM), these data will be crucial for EBFM implementation as described in NOAA Fisheries' EBFM  
3103 Roadmap.<sup>24</sup>

3104 Fortunately, ecosystem and socioeconomic programs within NOAA Fisheries and its partners are actively  
3105 collecting this information today. Additionally, ongoing work is being leveraged (e.g., stock assessment  
3106 surveys that also collect ecosystem information) and many opportunities exist for further leveraging. For

---

<sup>23</sup> <https://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/advanced-technology/electronic-monitoring/index>

<sup>24</sup> <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/op/pds/documents/01/120/01-120-01.pdf>

3107 instance, fishery-independent data collection aboard NOAA ships and chartered vessels could be  
3108 expanded at a relatively low cost to collect more interdisciplinary data for ecosystem research. Also,  
3109 coordinated and standardized ocean observations, as achieved through international collaborations  
3110 such as the Global Ocean Observing System<sup>25</sup> and their coordination of Essential Ocean Variables,  
3111 facilitates access to ecosystem data that may be useful in stock assessments. However, as mentioned  
3112 previously, an important consideration in expanding data collection efforts is ensuring staff capacity for  
3113 processing data and for conducting research to understand the ecosystem processes (Section 9.2.4). This  
3114 consideration may explain the lack of ecosystem and socioeconomic data to support full evaluations of  
3115 these drivers in all stock assessments.

3116 Numerous socioeconomic and ecosystem factors must be considered under a holistic approach to  
3117 managing living marine resources (Figure 8.1). Within an ecosystem, the key living and non-living  
3118 features include information on food webs; diseases and parasites; oceanography (e.g., temperature,  
3119 salinity, oxygen concentration, pH, and current dynamics); climate conditions; structural habitat; and  
3120 toxins. Given the variety of factors, diverse and innovative approaches are needed to collect and  
3121 characterize this information. Advanced sampling technologies, particularly from the following  
3122 disciplines, will continue to enhance data collections: biotechnology (e.g., characterization of food webs  
3123 using biosensors for sampling lipid, fatty acid, stable isotopes, genetics, and macroscopic analyses; and  
3124 detection of diseases and parasites using genetic, macroscopic, physiological, and standard medical  
3125 diagnostic analyses); remote sensing platforms and ocean observation systems (e.g., monitoring physical  
3126 water conditions using satellites, autonomous vehicles, and standard oceanographic instrumentation);  
3127 high-resolution and seasonal to decade-long climate models for forecasting climate conditions at scales  
3128 relevant to most fishery management decisions; underwater sensor technologies (e.g., quantification  
3129 and characterization of biological communities and their habitats using optics and sonar); and  
3130 chromatography and other detection techniques for toxins.

3131 There is a basic need to collect socioeconomic data to understand and manage fisheries in consideration  
3132 of their community-level importance as well as their economic contributions. However, the  
3133 recommendation for increasing the collection of this information is made here in the context of the  
3134 stock assessment process. In addition to modeling stock dynamics, assessments also model fishery  
3135 dynamics. Because fisheries support recreation, food, and livelihoods, their dynamics are driven largely  
3136 by socioeconomic decisions. Although innovation and technology may enable the improved collection of  
3137 socioeconomic data, the higher priority is to expand the collection of information related to fishermen's  
3138 decision processes, sales, revenue, value-added impacts, and jobs. These data are collected mainly  
3139 through on-the-ground outreach. However, some of this information may be well suited for collection  
3140 using EM/ER (Section 9.2.2).

#### 3141 **9.2.4 Advanced sampling technologies**

---

<sup>25</sup> <http://goosocean.org/>

3142 The previous section provided recommendations for expanding the types of data being collected for  
3143 stock assessment purposes. Although many of the recommendations are related to technological  
3144 advancements, the technologies discussed in this section focus largely on methods for monitoring stock  
3145 abundance. NOAA Fisheries has long recognized the importance of advanced sampling technologies for  
3146 enhancing survey data collection, improving abundance estimates, and minimizing uncertainties in  
3147 measurements and estimates. The research and development in advanced sampling technologies  
3148 include testing and calibration of the sampling tools, improving the efficiency of data processing, and  
3149 evaluating the feasibility of transitioning technologies into operations (Chapter 4). Technology  
3150 investments should be guided by stock assessment priorities and address information gaps to improve  
3151 stock and ecosystem assessments (e.g., Chapter 10). In addition, these investments should benefit  
3152 NOAA's next generation infrastructure with more efficient survey operations and integrated ocean  
3153 observation systems.

3154 For the research, development, and evaluation of advanced sampling technologies, NOAA will continue  
3155 to rely on partnerships among academic institutions, industry, and other agencies. Promoting these  
3156 partnerships with research and development of technology will be increasingly important, especially  
3157 given that NOAA's limited pool of technology expertise will need to implement and sustain these  
3158 technologies aboard its survey operations.

3159 Sensing technologies continue to be integrated into ship survey operations to achieve multidisciplinary  
3160 objectives, and this area holds significant potential for improving stock assessments. In particular, these  
3161 technologies provide opportunities for calibrating ongoing abundance surveys by directly observing the  
3162 area sampled by traditional gear (e.g., trawls) and the number, size, and type of species available to that  
3163 gear. A recent upgrade of the northeast scallop survey included an advanced optical imaging system,  
3164 which was calibrated and has facilitated estimation of absolute, rather than relative, abundance indices.  
3165 Thus, advanced technologies facilitate the estimation of absolute stock abundance and therefore may  
3166 be used to address recommendations in Section 9.2.1. Another benefit of sensor technology is the  
3167 ability to deploy sampling gear in areas that have been difficult to survey with traditional gear (e.g.,  
3168 rocky and coral habitats). In most cases, data-limited stocks (e.g., fish groups associated with reef or  
3169 rocky habitat) in federal fishery management plans lack data because of difficulties in sampling such  
3170 habitats. Therefore, advanced sampling technologies offer exciting opportunities for improving the  
3171 assessment and management of these important species.

3172 With the implementation of advanced technologies, larger volumes of data are typically collected. This is  
3173 particularly true for acoustic and optical surveys. For example, the next generation of fisheries acoustic  
3174 systems will collect four times more data. In addition, using stereo video systems to enhance visual  
3175 surveys will also drastically increase data collection. Although these large data streams need to be  
3176 stored, this concern is minor compared with the need for rapid access to processed data for analysis and  
3177 visualization. One approach NOAA Fisheries has taken to address this issue is to collaborate with the  
3178 computer vision technology industry to develop tools for automated image analysis. This technology

3179 continues to evolve rapidly; therefore, continued investments in processing efficiencies are critical and  
3180 expected to be beneficial.

3181 Another promising, low-cost technique to explore for filling important stock assessment data gaps is  
3182 environmental DNA (eDNA). This technology has typically been used to document the presence of a  
3183 species in a given system by detecting the DNA of that species. However, more recently, eDNA has  
3184 demonstrated potential for measuring abundance of a species under the theory that the concentration  
3185 of a species' DNA in the environment is in proportion to the density of that species (Takahara et al.,  
3186 2012). Given the simplicity of collecting water samples for later DNA analysis, it may be relatively cost-  
3187 effective to collect this information on either new platforms or by leveraging ongoing fishing or survey  
3188 operations.

3189 Wise investments in advanced sampling technologies must be guided by stock assessment priorities to  
3190 resolve key information gaps. Unmanned platforms (e.g., aerial systems, moorings, gliders, and  
3191 autonomous and remotely operated underwater vehicles) will become relatively low-cost options for  
3192 deploying acoustic and optical technologies, especially when compared to the cost of building, running,  
3193 and staffing a traditional research vessel. However, ships remain the key infrastructure for conducting  
3194 surveys and deploying technologies that augment and improve survey coverage. As technologies are  
3195 implemented, calibrations are required at various levels, ranging from sensor, inter-vessel, and sampling  
3196 gear performance, to changes in survey designs that are improved with technologies. Continued  
3197 investment in these platforms and their calibration is necessary for expanding the coverage of stock  
3198 abundance surveys and improving the assessment and management of data-limited species. Overall,  
3199 these technologies provide an opportunity among NOAA programs, academic institutions, and industry  
3200 to build an integrated survey and ocean observation infrastructure for NOAA's next generation stock  
3201 assessment enterprise.

### 3202 **9.2.5 Improving data management, processing, and delivery**

3203 As emphasized throughout this document, data collection systems play a critical role for the success and  
3204 improvement of stock assessments. In 2013, NOAA Fisheries conducted a series of independent reviews  
3205 of its data collection and management systems for stock assessments.<sup>26</sup> It became clear from these  
3206 reviews that comprehensive improvements are warranted. Additionally, the Open Data Initiative<sup>27</sup>  
3207 formally calls on federal agencies, such as NOAA Fisheries, to offer public access to government  
3208 information resources in a "computer readable" form. Thus, NOAA Fisheries is transitioning its data and  
3209 information systems to be more secure, easier to access, and more readily understood by the public.  
3210 These improvements offer opportunities, not only to address the Open Data Initiative, but also to  
3211 improve the stock assessment process.  
3212

---

<sup>26</sup> <http://www.st.nmfs.noaa.gov/science-program-review/>

<sup>27</sup> <https://www.data.gov/>

3213 Although the previous sections provide a vision for data types and collection techniques, this section  
3214 specifically refers to data management in relation to stock assessment efficiency. As NOAA Fisheries  
3215 creates data and information systems that comply with the Open Data Initiative, it is an opportune time  
3216 to address data issues that lead to confusion and delay in the stock assessment process. For some  
3217 assessments, analysts face challenges in obtaining all necessary data. These challenges arise because  
3218 many sources of data are managed by individual programs and partners, data require varying degrees of  
3219 processing before analysis, and the access and ability to process the data is limited. It is most efficient if  
3220 stock assessment scientists can simply obtain all necessary data in the formats required as early as  
3221 possible in the stock assessment process. There is a need to improve data management in NOAA  
3222 Fisheries and with partner organizations that provide data to the stock assessment process (particularly  
3223 within the networks used to compile fishery-dependent data). Stock assessments will become more  
3224 streamlined, and in some cases, more accurate, by creating systems that are open and easily accessible,  
3225 organized according to standard formats and data dictionaries, and that contain effective and  
3226 automated error-checking and processing procedures to facilitate access to timely and accurate data.  
3227 These technological and process-oriented improvements address objectives described in Chapter 10  
3228 related to improving the timeliness, efficiency, and effectiveness of the stock assessment process.

3229 The development of streamlined systems for compiling and processing data (e.g. catch, abundance,  
3230 composition) for assessment applications represents a first step toward improving assessment data  
3231 delivery. For example, a web-based interface, such as the Alaska Fisheries Information Network<sup>28</sup>  
3232 (AKFIN) simplifies data processing steps and ensures greater transparency in how the data were  
3233 compiled. More regional systems such as AKFIN are nonetheless needed. Features should provide the  
3234 user with ways to easily search and compile the information (e.g., through construction of maps, tables,  
3235 and diagnostic figures) while also allowing easy documentation of the steps that were taken in the  
3236 preparation of assessment input data. In the interest of transparency, routine retracing of these steps  
3237 should be made feasible, and to facilitate thorough evaluation, interfaces should be designed that  
3238 encourage users to examine data closely for characteristics such as incorrect data points and differences  
3239 due to alternative processing techniques. For example, the ability to easily examine fishery data by  
3240 sector, season, and spatial distribution can help users evaluate the number of fisheries that should be  
3241 explicitly modeled in an assessment (and allow for the easy creation of alternative configurations for  
3242 testing the sensitivity of an assessment). For situations where data from fishery-independent surveys  
3243 are available, analytical tools for processing such data collections can benefit from applications that use  
3244 innovative statistical techniques, such as better accounting for spatial dynamics (see the discussion in  
3245 Section 9.3 on software developments).

3246

3247

---

<sup>28</sup> <http://www.psmfc.org/program/alaska-fisheries-information-network-akfin>

3248

3249

3250

3251

***Box 9.1. Summary of Data Collection and Processing  
Recommendations***

3252

- **Establish a national working group in NOAA Fisheries focused on data collection for stock assessments.**
- **Conduct a gap analysis for stock assessment survey coverage and intensity in each region to facilitate survey prioritization.**
- **Conduct research to estimate survey catchability and selectivity to facilitate estimation of absolute abundance for key stocks.**
- **Adjust surveys to track shifting species distributions and conduct studies to calibrate surveys where distributions have changed.**
- **Partner with the fishing industry to conduct low-cost monitoring as part of normal fishing operations to fill data gaps and/or subsample fishery catch rates according to a sampling design.**
- **Increase use of cost-effective electronic monitoring and reporting to improve fishery-dependent data collection.**
- **Enhance broad spectrum sampling of ecosystem and socioeconomic data using new and existing platforms and technologies.**
- **Expand use of advanced sampling technologies (acoustics, optics, eDNA, and unmanned platforms) for tracking stock abundance by calibrating surveys and sampling in “untrawlable” habitat.**
- **Provide centralized open access to updated and processed stock assessment data.**
- **Utilize standardized and understandable data dictionaries and formats.**
- **Where possible, establish automated quality control and data**

3253

3254

3255

3256

3257

3258

3259

3260

3261

3262

3263

3264

3265

3266

**9.3. Innovations in stock assessment modeling**

3268 Analytical tools available for conducting stock assessments are more powerful and more efficient than  
3269 ever. This innovation has facilitated the integration of large amounts of data from diverse sources,  
3270 comprehensive characterizations of statistical uncertainty, and the evaluation of multiple hypotheses  
3271 about stock and fishery dynamics within an assessment. The tools themselves cannot “fix” issues in the

3272 data, but as tools develop, they contain enhanced functionality that allow for appropriate treatment of  
3273 data and presentation of results and uncertainties. The recommendations in this section pertain mostly  
3274 to technical advancements related to the functionality of analytical tools for stock assessments. These  
3275 recommendations address many of the challenges raised in Chapter 5, offering a direction for improving  
3276 stock assessment models. Some examples include new approaches for conducting data-limited  
3277 assessments, promising statistical tools, and alternative strategies for evaluating risk in fishery  
3278 management settings. The section concludes with a presentation of options for integrating ecosystem  
3279 information into stock assessment models.

### 3280 **9.3.1 Improved software and advanced models**

3281 Advances in software have greatly facilitated application developments for fisheries stock assessments.  
3282 The ability to develop open source software packages that focus on reproducibility of results and  
3283 provide assistance with documenting those results has provided more time for assessment model  
3284 developers and analysts to concentrate their efforts on prototyping and designing alternative models  
3285 that account for a range of reasonable assumptions. This flexibility is important for providing an  
3286 improved characterization of the true uncertainty surrounding assessment results (see Section 9.3.3).

3287 The software package that continues to form the foundation of the majority of NOAA Fisheries' stock  
3288 assessments is Auto Differentiation Model Builder<sup>29</sup> (ADMB; Fournier et al., 2012). The main advantage  
3289 of ADMB is its ability to efficiently run complex nonlinear models with many estimated parameters,  
3290 which is how most modern stock assessment models are configured. NOAA Fisheries continues to be the  
3291 primary funding source for ADMB, providing global leadership in assessment model support and  
3292 development. Unless assessments migrate to another platform, it is important for the entire stock  
3293 assessment enterprise that this support continues at a level sufficient for ADMB to be able to adapt to  
3294 ongoing advancements in assessment science. For example, in 2016 the ADMB project embraced a  
3295 European-developed project, Template Model Builder<sup>30</sup> (TMB), which offers a substantial increase in  
3296 speed for certain classes of model structures. NOAA Fisheries' scientists are significantly engaged in both  
3297 ADMB and TMB.

3298 Modern open source statistical programming languages such as R<sup>31</sup> represent another significant  
3299 advancement for stock assessments. These programming languages improve the efficiency and rigor by  
3300 which assessment data are evaluated, alternative assessment scenarios are conducted, and results are  
3301 assimilated and presented. These languages are relatively accessible to analysts without formal training  
3302 in computer programming, but they provide users with access to powerful programming tools (including  
3303 C++ and FORTRAN libraries) within a common interface. Also, given the open source nature and global  
3304 popularity, users also have access to tested and reviewed software packages that allow the

---

<sup>29</sup> <http://admb-project.org/>

<sup>30</sup> <https://github.com/kaskr/adcomp/wiki>

<sup>31</sup> <https://www.r-project.org/>

3305 implementation of common methods without the need to develop the methods from scratch. This  
3306 access is particularly important for assessment analysts who are asked to evaluate numerous  
3307 assumptions and configurations over shortened time periods, and NOAA Fisheries' scientists have  
3308 contributed these software packages to the public domain (e.g., r4ss<sup>32</sup>).

3309 A valuable opportunity available to assessment developers is the ability to coordinate with colleagues on  
3310 projects via virtual and cloud-based platforms. This coordination has been enabled by modern online  
3311 version control systems (e.g., git<sup>33</sup>), which provide easy access to develop code, write documentation,  
3312 and facilitate model testing and exchange of ideas and methods. Many assessment platforms have been  
3313 developed by single authors or small teams in independent settings. However, the community-level  
3314 development option makes it easy to access a broad range of expertise, resulting in enhanced  
3315 functionality and more thorough testing. Overall, the software packages, diversity of knowledge, and  
3316 collaborative opportunities available to assessment model developers have matured to a point where  
3317 NOAA Fisheries can now take a more professional approach to the development of general assessment  
3318 tools. The assessment model, Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013) has already migrated into  
3319 NOAA's Virtual Lab<sup>34</sup> where git capabilities allow access to NOAA and invited external developers. The  
3320 recommended approach to tool development will be to start with professional software architecture  
3321 and to create modular applications to facilitate the rapid incorporation of new features as needed. This  
3322 approach is an important component of the next generation stock assessment framework, because it  
3323 allows for standard models that improve efficiency and transparency, as well as easy expansion of  
3324 models (including more holistic options) driven by needs identified through prioritization.

3325 The cutting edge of assessment model development lies in the ability to treat certain model  
3326 components (e.g., natural mortality) not as fixed constants, but rather as factors that vary randomly  
3327 over time, age, and/or space in a way that is informed by available data and constrained by an  
3328 estimated statistical distribution. This technique has many names, including state-space models, random  
3329 effects models, mixed-effects models, and hierarchical models, among others. The use of this statistical  
3330 technique helps to address several challenges in the assessment process. In particular, the  
3331 characterization of uncertainty may be improved by accounting for variation in the model structure (i.e.,  
3332 process error). This approach relates to improved risk assessment (Section 9.3.3) as well as an ability to  
3333 indirectly account for ecosystem and socioeconomic effects (Chapter 8 and Section 9.3.4). Even when  
3334 there is not a clear understanding of the mechanisms that cause stock and fishery dynamics to drift over  
3335 time, and when data are unavailable to model those mechanisms, allowing for a random but informed  
3336 variation of a model component may sufficiently account for these external drivers in some cases.  
3337 Although these techniques are not yet common in U.S. stock assessments, many European stocks are

---

<sup>32</sup> <https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/r4ss/index.html>

<sup>33</sup> <https://git-scm.com/>

<sup>34</sup> <https://vlab.ncep.noaa.gov/group/stock-synthesis/home>

3338 assessed using the State-space Assessment Model (SAM<sup>35</sup>), which does allow for random effects. Recent  
3339 development of TMB, which allows for efficient estimation of complex statistical models with numerous  
3340 random effects, now opens the door to implementing this technique more broadly in stock assessments.  
3341 It is recommended here that many stock assessments capitalize on this opportunity to better  
3342 characterize changes in processes and better account for spatial dynamics.

3343 A specific technical challenge for modern assessment methods relates to “data weighting.” This term  
3344 refers to the appropriate specification (or estimation) of variances associated with different data  
3345 components. This term also includes how to elicit and apply prior information, particularly for data-  
3346 limited situations, and how to specify process error variances where estimation is presently difficult or  
3347 impractical. In general, data weighting requires some degree of subjectivity. However, recent  
3348 developments to estimate variances of composition data hold some promise for objective approaches  
3349 (e.g., Francis, 2014; Thorson, 2014). Tests for these approaches and how they may apply to data-limited  
3350 situations require simulation testing (e.g., Deroba et al., 2014). Furthermore, approaches that augment  
3351 information on a particular stock based on data from similar species and regions are a clear, cost-  
3352 effective way forward (for example applications see Punt et al., 2011; Punt and Dorn, 2013; ). As noted  
3353 in Bentley (2014), models for management face the challenge to balance opposing risks of inappropriate  
3354 management “action” due to assessment inaccuracy, and inappropriate management “inaction” due to  
3355 assessment uncertainty.

### 3356 **9.3.2 Using multiple models to generate advice**

3357 Methods that combine results from multiple alternative models are generally referred to as “ensemble  
3358 modeling.” This approach involves generating multiple projections of future system states using a range  
3359 of assumptions about how to configure the assessment. Therefore, ensemble modeling has the  
3360 potential to capture structural uncertainty in addition to the observation uncertainty that is typically  
3361 quantified. This approach is widely used in climate modeling where uncertainty is reflected in the  
3362 accuracy of the approximations to the well-known and accepted physical principles of climate and the  
3363 inherent variability of the climate system. For the purposes of weather forecasts (e.g., predicting a  
3364 hurricane track), model ensembles are created from a suite of models whose performance is updated  
3365 (with precise data) at regular intervals and monitored to provide probability statements on near- and  
3366 medium-term predictions. The past predictions of each model can be evaluated relative to known storm  
3367 tracks and used to weight its contribution to the ensemble for future predictions.

3368 Fish stocks and fishery management operate at a slower pace than weather predictions. The challenges  
3369 with fisheries, however, are that the observations are rarely precise; many drivers affecting fish stocks  
3370 (other than fishing) typically go unobserved (e.g., the impact of tides, food availability, predation, and so  
3371 on); and there is less opportunity for validating past predictions (e.g., hurricane forecasts can be  
3372 compared with the actual hurricane track, but the true abundance of a fish stock is seldom known). In

---

<sup>35</sup> <https://www.stockassessment.org/>

3373 these settings, more formal methods of combining model alternatives, such as Bayesian Model  
3374 Averaging, (e.g., Buckland et al., 1997; Durban et al., 2005; Hoeting et al., 1999; Kass and Raftery, 1995;  
3375 Raftery et al., 2005; Chimielechi and Raftery, 2011) or bootstrapping approaches (Stewart and Martell,  
3376 2015) can be applied. Critical simulation testing has shown that model averaging approaches  
3377 outperformed methods that generated advice based on a “best” model (Wilberg and Bence, 2008). It is  
3378 recommended that stock assessments capitalize on these advances in ensemble modeling to generate  
3379 management advice with more complete characterizations of uncertainty. However, it is important to  
3380 stress that each model included in the final ensemble should be considered plausible according to the  
3381 assessment analysts and reviewers (at least). Further, all models should be well documented and  
3382 contributed early enough in the assessment to be included in the assessment review process. Thus,  
3383 every model in an ensemble should have consistent levels of review and transparency.

### 3384 **9.3.3 Risk assessment for fisheries management decisions**

3385 The evaluation of risk and accounting for uncertainty are clear requirements for setting annual catch  
3386 limits (ACLs) as specified in the MSA (e.g., to provide a sufficiently low chance of overfishing while  
3387 maximizing catch; Methot et al., 2014). These actions involve estimating scientific uncertainty (Chapter  
3388 5) and evaluating management uncertainty (Patrick et al., 2013). Approaches are outlined later to  
3389 evaluate uncertainty in the implementation of management actions with a goal of satisfying this and  
3390 other objectives for fishery managers and stakeholders. Such methods should be shown to be robust to  
3391 management objectives (i.e., low probability of leading to an overfished state while optimizing yield).  
3392 For management purposes, a key for new analytical tools will be to balance research models and  
3393 operational management tools that are used as a basis for setting catch limits and determining status.

3394 The field of decision theory provides useful analytical methods for finding optimal solutions in the  
3395 assessment of risk. However, these approaches suffer from a lack of transparency, and simpler methods  
3396 are often preferred by fishery managers. An example where a risk-averse, decision-theoretic approach  
3397 was replaced by a more straightforward method has been adopted for certain (“Tier 1”) stocks managed  
3398 under the Bering Sea/Aleutian Islands Groundfish Fishery Management Plan (Amendment 56). In this  
3399 example, the risk-averse approach to developing a catch recommendation (i.e., Acceptable Biological  
3400 Catch, ABC) was found to be equal to an approach that simply used a certain type of averaging (i.e., the  
3401 harmonic mean) of the estimate of the overfishing limit ( $F_{MSY}$ ). An appealing characteristic of this  
3402 approach is that the harmonic mean is some percent reduction from  $F_{MSY}$ , and when uncertainty in the  
3403 assessment (particularly around  $F_{MSY}$ ) is high, the recommended catch is decreased as one might expect  
3404 in a precautionary harvest control rule. This approach has proven useful for accounting for scientific  
3405 uncertainty, but fishery managers must also consider other factors, such as management uncertainty  
3406 and socioeconomic factors, when optimizing yield.

3407 Another management measure that attempts to account for assessment uncertainty related to risk of  
3408 exceeding an overfishing limit is known as the P\* approach (Shertzer et al., 2008). This method relates  
3409 the probability that a projected future catch would exceed the overfishing ( $F_{MSY}$ ) level and allows the

3410 policy makers to establish the level of risk related to a catch limit selection. For example, if  $P^*$  was set to  
3411 0.4, then this would represent a 40% chance that the corresponding catch limit would exceed the true  
3412 overfishing limit. Although effective at addressing specific sources of uncertainty, the  $P^*$  and decision-  
3413 theoretic approaches do not account for considerations related to interactions among fisheries and  
3414 multiple species within an ecosystem.

3415 An important advancement for evaluating risk in fishery management is the growing application of  
3416 simulation-tested management strategy evaluations (MSEs; Butterworth et al., 1996; Butterworth, 2007;  
3417 Punt et al., 2014). A distinct advantage of this decision analysis tool is that models used for developing  
3418 catch recommendations (i.e., the actual management strategies or control rules) are designed to be  
3419 transparent and relatively simple. Also, the approach can incorporate any number of considerations,  
3420 including biological, ecosystem, and socioeconomic factors. This aligns well with the NS1 Guidelines,  
3421 which suggest that a council can consider the socioeconomic and ecological tradeoffs between being  
3422 more or less risk averse. Further, by conducting simulation testing, there is a certain amount of  
3423 confidence in the results. In a well-designed MSE, stakeholders are engaged throughout the process to  
3424 ensure that the performance metrics that directly relate to management objectives are easy to  
3425 understand (Punt et al., 2014). The challenges for this approach include developing defensible operating  
3426 model configurations, particularly for testing control rules in data-limited situations. Borrowing from  
3427 related species and stocks from other areas could help establish plausible estimates for biological  
3428 parameters (e.g., Smith et al., 2015).

3429 The MSE approach benefits from using disparate sources of information and models (including  
3430 multispecies and ecosystem considerations) to devise plausible realities for testing management  
3431 options. Looking forward, recent developments in statistical programming languages such as R (Section  
3432 9.3.1) have made it easier for stakeholders to participate in MSEs. For instance, by having access to tools  
3433 that are designed to work within a specific assessment framework, such as the `ss3sim`<sup>36</sup> package for  
3434 Stock Synthesis (Methot and Wetzel, 2013), more time can be spent on developing objectives and  
3435 performance metrics with stakeholders than on coding simulation analyses. Other R packages specialize  
3436 in user-friendly interfaces to evaluate policy choices given uncertain states of nature, such as `mseR`  
3437 (Kronlund et al., 2012) and the MSE tool developed for the International Pacific Halibut Commission.<sup>37</sup> It  
3438 is recommended here that NOAA Fisheries continues to invest in the development of MSE tools and the  
3439 resources necessary for development and expansion of MSEs to inform management decisions in the  
3440 face of uncertainty.

#### 3441 **9.3.4 Holistic stock assessment models**

3442 Ecosystem information is beginning to form a more integral part of modern stock assessments. Effective  
3443 marine conservation and management requires an understanding of how ecosystem drivers (e.g.,

<sup>36</sup> <https://github.com/ss3sim/ss3sim>

<sup>37</sup> <http://shiny.iphc.int/sample-apps/mseapp/>

3444 temperature changes) can affect assessment results (in particular, biological reference points). As these  
3445 broader applications become a more integral part of the stock assessment process, any number of  
3446 management decisions can account for this information, including catch levels. Stock-specific ecosystem  
3447 considerations within an assessment can help prioritize factors most likely to affect processes related to  
3448 the stock. In addition, these considerations can provide further specifics on future productivity and  
3449 potential management actions that may be needed (e.g., Shotwell et al., 2014).

3450 Chapter 8 provided a full discussion of holistic approaches to stock assessments that consider ecosystem  
3451 and socioeconomic factors. Most current stock assessment models can incorporate many of these  
3452 factors today, but there remains a need for research and development. With mixed-stock fisheries and  
3453 climate change forcing systems into unobserved states with consequences for fisheries (e.g., Ianelli et  
3454 al., 2011; Meuter et al., 2011; Holsman et al., 2016), it is imperative that next generation stock  
3455 assessment models have straightforward options for accounting for ecosystem and/or socioeconomic  
3456 factors, and that the effects of these additional factors be easily understood and tested. Example model  
3457 features that would facilitate more holistic assessments include capabilities for spatial structure and  
3458 connectivity, options to incorporate multispecies dynamics, state-space implementations that allow  
3459 efficient models with random change and variability, the ability to apply multiple model  
3460 configurations/types, and standard diagnostic and reporting features for rapid dissemination of results.  
3461 The recommendation here to develop assessment tools with these capabilities could result in more  
3462 efficient, but also more comprehensive (holistic), stock assessment models.

### 3463 **9.3.5 Expanding and improving process studies**

3464 Many of the recommendations provided in this chapter are challenging to implement without a more  
3465 complete understanding of key processes. For instance, in order to expand the scope of a stock  
3466 assessment to include ecosystem and socioeconomic factors, it is not only important to collect the  
3467 necessary data (Section 9.2.3) and to have assessment tools capable of incorporating those data  
3468 (Section 9.3.4), it is also necessary to understand the main processes that drive stock and fishery  
3469 dynamics. These process studies will provide guidance on how to configure expanded models. This  
3470 research is also useful in helping to select plausible models for ensembles (Section 9.3.2) and to design  
3471 and implement MSEs (Section 9.3.3). Thus, process research has an important role in improving the  
3472 basis on which models of fish population dynamics and ecosystem dynamics are built. It is  
3473 recommended here that NOAA continue to invest in these efforts and, in particular, that these  
3474 investments be guided by stock assessment priorities (Chapter 10). Key areas for process studies that  
3475 would address stock assessment priorities include the following research areas:

- 3476 • Habitat and environmental factors affecting the distribution of fish, fisheries, and the design of  
3477 sampling programs
- 3478 • Factors constraining the physiology of fish in a changing environment
- 3479 • Flow of energy through marine food webs

- 3480
- Connection between changes in the marine environment and fluctuations in birth and growth
- 3481 rates of young fish
- 3482

## 3483 **9.4. Conclusions**

3484 Although stock assessment science has benefited from numerous advancements during the past  
3485 century, continued research and development is still required. A series of research initiatives within  
3486 NOAA Fisheries allow federal researchers to develop projects that specifically tackle these objectives.  
3487 These nationally run programs fund priority projects across the regions that improve stock assessments.

3488 Another path for improving assessments is through coordinated workshops and symposia that  
3489 specifically address theories, estimators, and assumptions within particular aspects of stock assessment.  
3490 These workshops provide the opportunity to synthesize current research and develop guidelines and  
3491 best practices; examples include NOAA Fisheries' National Stock Assessment Workshops and the  
3492 workshops being organized by the Center for the Advancement of Population Assessment  
3493 Methodology.<sup>38</sup> The next generation stock assessment framework described in this document is  
3494 attainable given the current state of the science, ongoing prioritized investments in research, and  
3495 opportunities to collaborate broadly throughout the stock assessment community.

### 3496 ***Box 9.2. Assessment Modeling Recommendations***

- 3497
- Utilize advancements in statistical techniques, such as state-space, geo-statistics, sample weighting, auto-correlated processes, and so on.
  - Provide a more complete characterization of uncertainty and utilize ensemble modeling and decision analysis tools to convey structural uncertainty and inform fishery management decisions.
  - Improve professionalism of model development (professional architecture, thorough testing and publication of test results, thorough documentation and user guides, community development, and cloud-based computing).
  - Expand the scope of assessment models where appropriate to include spatial dynamics, multispecies and ecosystem processes, and/or socioeconomics.
  - Rely on stock assessment priorities to guide investments in innovative science and technology and the resources necessary to implement these advancements.
- 3500
- 3501
- 3502
- 3503
- 3504
- 3505
- 3506

---

<sup>38</sup> <http://www.capamresearch.org/>

## 3507 **References**

- 3508 Adams, C. F., T. J. Miller, J. P. Manderson, D. E. Richardson, and B. E. Smith. 2015. Butterfish 2014 stock  
3509 assessment. U.S. Dept. Commer., Northeast Fish. Sci. Cent. Ref. Doc. 15-06, 110 p.  
3510 <https://doi.org/10.7289/V5WM1BCT>
- 3511 Bentley, N. 2014. Data and time poverty in fisheries estimation: potential approaches and solutions. ICES  
3512 J. Mar. Sci. 72:186–193. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsu023>
- 3513 Brodziak, J., and C. M. Legault. 2005. Model averaging to estimate rebuilding targets for overfished  
3514 stocks. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 62:544–562. <https://doi.org/10.1139/f04-199>
- 3515 Brodziak, J., and K. Piner. 2010. Model averaging and probable status of North Pacific striped marlin,  
3516 *Tetrapturus audax*. C. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 67:793–805. <https://doi.org/10.1139/F10-029>
- 3517 Buckland, S. T., K. P. Burnham, and N. H. Augustin. 1997. Model selection: an integral part of inference.  
3518 Biometrics 53:603–618. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2533961>
- 3519 Burnham, K. P., and D. R. Anderson. 1998. Model selection and multimodel inference: a practical  
3520 information theoretic approach, 353 p. Springer Verlag, NY.
- 3521 Butterworth, D. S. 2007. Why a management procedure approach? Some positives and negatives. ICES J.  
3522 Mar. Sci. 64:613–617. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsm003>
- 3523 Butterworth, D. S., A. E. Punt, and A. D. M. Smith. 1996. On plausible hypotheses and their weighting,  
3524 with implications for selection between variants of the revised management procedure. Forty-Sixth  
3525 Rep. Int. Whaling Comm., p. 637–640.
- 3526 Chimielechi, R. M., and A. E. Raftery. 2011. Probabilistic visibility forecasting using Bayesian model  
3527 averaging. Mon. Weather Rev. 139:1626–1636. <https://doi.org/10.1175/2010MWR3516.1>
- 3528 Deroba, J. J., D. S. Butterworth, R. D. Methot Jr., J. A. A. De Oliveira, C. Fernandez, A. Nielsen, S. X.  
3529 Cadrin, M. Dickey-Collas, C. M. Legault, J. Ianelli, J. L. Valero, C. L. Needle, J. M. O'Malley, Y-J. Chang,  
3530 G. G. Thompson, C. Canales, D. P. Swain, D. C. M. Miller, N. T. Hintzen, M. Bertignac, L. Ibaibarriaga,  
3531 A. Silva, A. Murta, L. T. Kell, C. L. de Moor, A. M. Parma, C. M. Dichmont, V. R. Restrepo, Y. Ye, E.  
3532 Jardim, P. D. Spencer, D. H. Hanselman, J. Blaylock, M. Mood, and P.-J. F. Hulson. 2015. Simulation  
3533 testing the robustness of stock assessment models to error: some results from the ICES strategic  
3534 initiative on stock assessment methods. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:19–30.  
3535 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst237>
- 3536 Fournier, D. A., H. J. Skaug, J. Ancheta, J. Ianelli, A. Magnusson, M. N. Maunder, A. Nielsen, and J. Sibert.  
3537 2012. AD Model Builder: using automatic differentiation for statistical inference of highly  
3538 parameterized complex nonlinear models. Optim. Methods Softw. 27:233–249.  
3539 <https://doi.org/10.1080/10556788.2011.597854>

- 3540 Francis, R. I. C. C. 2014. Replacing the multinomial in stock assessment models: a first step. *Fish. Res.*  
3541 151:70–84. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.12.015>
- 3542 Holsman, K. K., J. Ianelli, K. Aydin, A. E. Punt, and E. A. Moffitt. 2016. A comparison of fisheries biological  
3543 reference points estimated from temperature-specific multi-species and single-species climate-  
3544 enhanced stock assessment models. *Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr.* 134:360–378.  
3545 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2015.08.001>
- 3546 Kronlund, A. R., S. P. Cox, and J. S. Cleary. 2012. Management strategy evaluation in R (mseR): user's  
3547 guide and simulation exercises. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 3001, 52 p.
- 3548 Maunder, M. N., P. R. Crone, J. L. Valero, and B. X. Semmens. 2014. Selectivity: theory, estimation, and  
3549 application in fishery stock assessment models. *Fish. Res.* 158:1–4.  
3550 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2014.03.017>
- 3551 Methot, R. D. Jr. 2009. Stock assessment: operational models in support of fisheries management. *In*  
3552 *The future of fishery science in North America* (R. J. Beamish and B. J. Rothschild, eds.), p. 137–165.  
3553 Springer, NY.
- 3554 Methot, R. D. Jr., G. R. Tromble, D. M. Lambert, and K. E. Greene. 2014. Implementing a science-based  
3555 system for preventing overfishing and guiding sustainable fisheries in the United States. *ICES J. Mar.*  
3556 *Sci.* 71:183–194. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst119>
- 3557 Methot, R. D. Jr., and C. R. Wetzel. 2013. Stock synthesis: a biological and statistical framework for fish  
3558 stock assessment and fishery management. *Fish. Res.* 142:86–99.  
3559 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2012.10.012>
- 3560 Patrick, W. S., W. N. Morrison, M. Nelson, and R. L. González Marrero. 2013. Factors affecting  
3561 management uncertainty in U.S. fisheries and methodological solutions. *Ocean Coast. Manage.*  
3562 71:64–72. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ocecoaman.2012.11.002>
- 3563 Punt, A. E., D. C. Smith, and A. D. M. Smith. 2011. Among-stock comparisons for improving stock  
3564 assessments of data-poor stocks: the “Robin Hood” approach. *ICES J. Mar. Sci.* 68:972–981.  
3565 <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsr039>
- 3566 Punt, A. E., and M. Dorn. 2014. Comparisons of meta-analytic methods for deriving a probability  
3567 distribution for the steepness of the stock–recruitment relationship. *Fish. Res.* 149:43–54.  
3568 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2013.09.015>
- 3569 Ralston, S., A. E. Punt, and O. S. Hamel, J. D. DeVore, and R. J. Conser. 2011. A meta-analytic approach to  
3570 quantifying scientific uncertainty in stock assessments. *Fish. Bull.* 109:217–231.
- 3571 Shertzer, K. W., M. H. Prager, and E. H. Williams. 2008. A probability-based approach to setting annual  
3572 catch levels. *Fish. Bull.* 106:225–232.

- 3573 Shotwell, S. K., D. H. Hanselman, S. Zador, and K. Aydin. 2014. Proposed framework for stock-specific  
3574 ecosystem considerations (SEC) in Alaskan groundfish fishery management plans. September Plan  
3575 Team Report, 25 p. [Available at  
3576 Specific Ecosystem Considerations Sept-2014.pdf">Specific Ecosystem Considerations Sept-2014.pdf.]
- 3578 Shotwell, S. K., D. H. Hanselman, and I. M. Belkin. 2014. Toward biophysical synergy: investigating  
3579 advection along the Polar Front to identify factors influencing Alaska sablefish recruitment.  
3580 Deep-Sea Res. Part II: Topical Stud. Oceanogr. 107:40–53.  
3581 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2012.08.024>
- 3582 Stewart, I. J., and S. J. D. Martell. 2015. Reconciling stock assessment paradigms to better inform  
3583 fisheries management. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:2187–2196. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fsv061>
- 3584 Takahara, T., T. Minamoto, H. Yamanaka, H. Doi, and Z. Kawabata. 2012. Estimation of fish biomass  
3585 using environmental DNA. PLOS ONE 7(4): e35868. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0035868>
- 3586 Thorson, J. T., A. C. Hicks, and R. D. Methot. 2014. Random effect estimation of time-varying factors in  
3587 Stock Synthesis. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 72:178–185. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst211>
- 3588 Thorson, J. T. 2014. Standardizing compositional data for stock assessment. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 71:1117–  
3589 1128. <https://doi.org/10.1093/icesjms/fst224>
- 3590 Thorson, J. T., I. G. Taylor, I. J. Stewart, and A. E. Punt. 2014. Rigorous meta-analysis of life history  
3591 correlations by simultaneously analyzing multiple population dynamics models. Ecol. Applications  
3592 24:315–326. <https://doi.org/10.1890/12-1803.1>
- 3593 Thorson, J., C. Minto, C. V. Minto-Vera, K. M. Kleisner, and C. Longo. 2013. A new role for effort  
3594 dynamics in the theory of harvested populations and data-poor stock assessment. Can. J. Fish.  
3595 Aquat. Sci. 70: 1829–1844. <https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfas-2013-0280>
- 3596 Thorson, J. T., J. M. Cope, K. M. Kleisner, J. F. Samhour, A. O. Shelton, E. J. Ward. 2015. Giants' shoulders  
3597 15 years later: lessons, challenges, and guidelines in fisheries meta-analysis. Fish Fish. 16(2): 342–  
3598 361. <https://doi.org/10.1111/faf.12061>
- 3599 Tyrrell, M. C., J. S. Link, and H. Moustahfid. 2011. The importance of including predation in fish  
3600 population models: implications for biological reference points. Fish. Res. 108:1–8.  
3601 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fishres.2010.12.025>  
3602

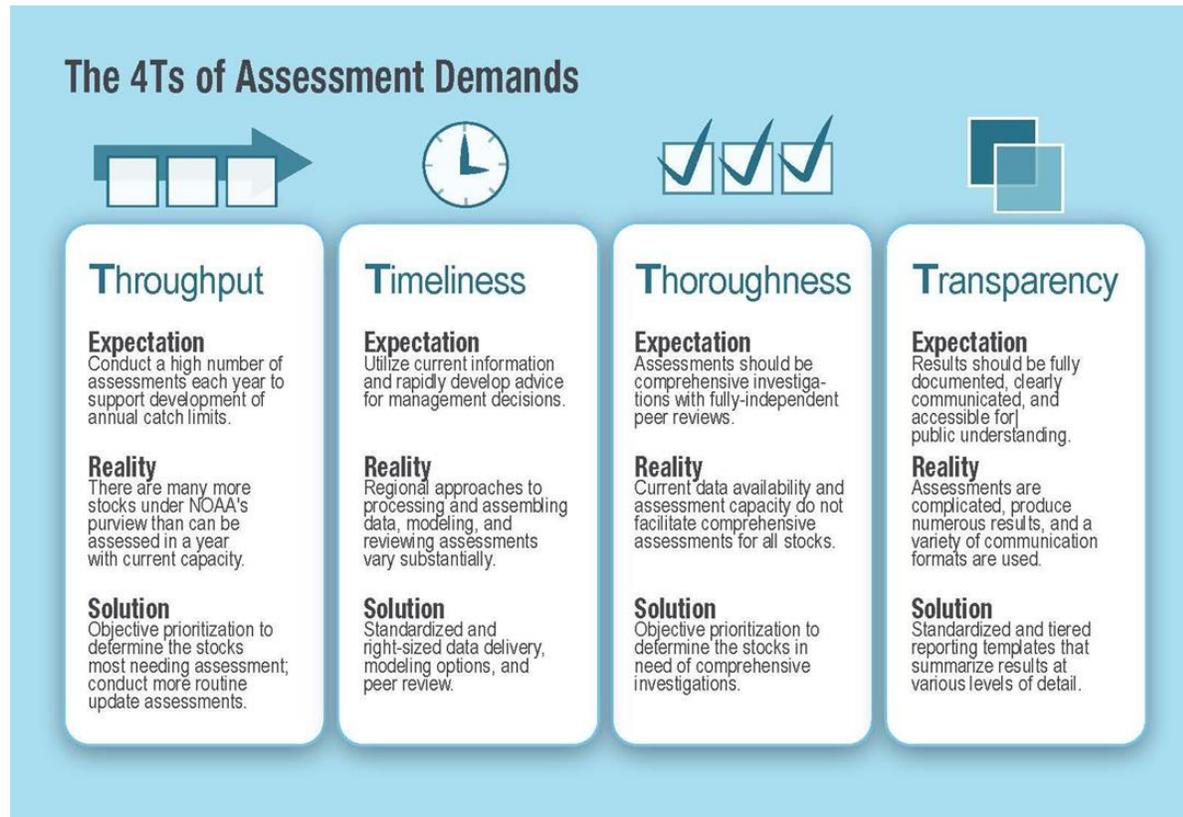
## 3603 **Chapter 10—An Efficient and Effective Stock Assessment** 3604 **Enterprise**

### 3605 **Chapter highlights:**

- 3606 • **The demand for increasing the quantity and quality of stock assessments has overloaded**  
3607 **NOAA's stock assessment enterprise.**
- 3608 • **The completion rate of stock assessments is affected by varying requirements regarding the**  
3609 **complexity of data sources, and how timely, thorough, and transparent assessments need to**  
3610 **be to support effective management.**
- 3611 • **A national method for categorizing and prioritizing stock assessments is proposed to balance**  
3612 **stock-specific needs, better use assessment resources, and identify gaps in NOAA's stock**  
3613 **assessment enterprise.**
- 3614 • **Stock assessments should use more standardized processes regarding data preparation and**  
3615 **delivery, assessment modeling, peer review, and communication.**
- 3616 • **Research is necessary to continue improving stock assessments, and the standardized**  
3617 **operational process must be adaptable to incorporate advancements.**

### 3618 **10.1. Introduction**

3619 NOAA Fisheries' national stock assessment enterprise consists of several regional assessment programs  
3620 that provide scientific advice to regional fishery management organizations (Chapter 3). Overall, this  
3621 federal fishery management system operates in accordance with the MSA; however, the regional  
3622 assessment programs and management organizations have developed independently over time. Thus,  
3623 the processes by which MSA mandates are addressed can vary by region. Although the science–  
3624 management interface has successfully achieved its goals for federal fisheries (Chapter 2), the demands  
3625 and challenges surrounding the provision of best scientific information are substantial, conflicting, and  
3626 broadly applicable. These issues can be classified according to the “4Ts” (Figure 10.1).  
3627



3628  
3629 **Figure 10.1.** The major demands and challenges facing NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment enterprise  
3630 summarized by 4Ts (throughput, timeliness, thoroughness, and transparency).

3631  
3632 There are unrealistic expectations surrounding the 4Ts and it is not possible to simultaneously achieve  
3633 high grades for each T. Figure 10.1 summarizes expectations and realities for the current stock  
3634 assessment enterprise while also offering solutions to better meet expectations. These solutions do not  
3635 intend to meet all expectations, but rather offer a balanced approach that manages expectations and  
3636 suggests improvements where feasible. Thus, in this chapter, the range of improvements provided will  
3637 achieve a more efficient and effective stock assessment process.

3638  
3639 Nationally, there are many more federally managed fish stocks than can be assessed in a single year with  
3640 NOAA Fisheries' current stock assessment capacity. The annual stock assessment demand in a given  
3641 region typically exceeds the number of assessments that NOAA scientists can complete. However,  
3642 annual assessments may be unnecessary for stocks that are not highly valued commercially,  
3643 recreationally, or for other reasons. Also, stocks that do not exhibit substantial fluctuations in  
3644 abundance from year to year may not require annual assessments. Because it is unnecessary to revise  
3645 catch recommendations for certain stocks every year, and because NOAA Fisheries has limited stock  
3646 assessment capacity, it is essential to determine which stocks are most in need of assessment. For high-  
3647 priority stocks, it is also important to set the frequency at which assessments should be conducted in  
3648 following years, and determine how comprehensive each assessment should be (i.e., the key data

3649 sources that should be used to calibrate the assessment as well as the nature of peer review that should  
3650 occur). This chapter describes an objective national approach for establishing an assessment portfolio  
3651 and offers suggestions for developing more efficient regional assessment processes.

3652  
3653 This portfolio approach is fundamental to maximizing available stock assessment resources, guiding  
3654 future investments, and achieving sustainable fisheries and resilient communities to the maximum  
3655 extent possible. The main components of the portfolio approach include the following:

- 3656
- 3657 1. Classifying the stock assessments conducted by NOAA Fisheries
  - 3658 2. Establishing stock-specific targets for assessment frequency and the level (types of data used) of  
3659 each assessment
  - 3660 3. Developing annual prioritized lists of stocks to assess in each region
  - 3661 4. Conducting gap analyses that compare classified assessments against their target levels
  - 3662 5. Using the resource assessment to right-size the stock assessment enterprise and seek funding as  
3663 needed

3664  
3665 A similar approach to strategic planning was introduced in the 2001 Stock Assessment Improvement  
3666 Plan (Mace et al., 2001), which included an assessment classification system and strategic guidance  
3667 outlined by the Three Tiers of Assessment Excellence (Chapter 2). Overall, this system provided guidance  
3668 and justification for expanding and improving the stock assessment program. However, with the  
3669 increasing demand for stock assessments, and the evolution of legal mandates, scientific knowledge and  
3670 capability, and assessment processes, it is clear that a new portfolio approach is needed. In the following  
3671 sections, we describe each of the three components of this new approach with reference to the existing  
3672 system.

3673

## 3674 **10.2. Classifying stock assessments**

3675 Not all stock assessments are created equal. In Chapter 1, stock assessments were defined as being a  
3676 process that results in a product. However, both the process and the product vary across the United  
3677 States. See Chapter 6 for a description of the various regional assessment review processes (Table 6.1),  
3678 and Chapter 5 for the range of stock assessment modeling approaches and their data requirements  
3679 (Table 5.1). Thus, the type of product produced and degree of effort required for each assessment varies  
3680 substantially. Further, the fishery management process may rely on analyses to support decisions, such  
3681 as establishing annual catch limits, which use assessment science but do not assess the status of the  
3682 stock and therefore are technically not stock assessments. For example, one approach to adapting catch  
3683 regulations without conducting a full stock assessment is to rely on estimates from a previous  
3684 assessment to forecast stock abundance and catch recommendations using updated catch data. These  
3685 approaches are very useful analyses that support management between more complete stock  
3686 assessments; however, they should not be considered stock assessments. Additionally, stock assessment  
3687 research is conducted outside the operational assessment process to improve stock assessment

3688 methods. This work can be just as involved (if not more) than an operational assessment, but is not  
3689 immediately used to provide management advice.

3690 To offer a consistent language on the various types of assessment-related analyses conducted by NOAA  
3691 Fisheries, the following general categories are recommended:

- 3692 • **Research stock assessment**—development or revision of a stock assessment data type or  
3693 method, typically subjected to the regional assessment review process. If the activity both  
3694 produces a substantial revision to the assessment method and applies that method to produce  
3695 management advice, then the activity is labelled as both a research assessment and an  
3696 operational assessment (next category).
- 3697 • **Operational stock assessment (or “stock assessment”)**—analyses conducted to provide  
3698 scientific advice to fishery managers with particular focus on determining stock status and  
3699 recommending catch limits. These are the predominant assessment activities and include  
3700 assessments using any of the methods described in Table 5.1, updated with the most recent  
3701 data. Within the range of operational assessments will be first time applications of previously  
3702 researched methods (“new” or “benchmark” assessments); applications with updated data  
3703 streams and minor revisions to methods within the scope of previously researched themes; and  
3704 applications that simply update the model with the most recent data. However, if only catch  
3705 data are updated then the activity falls into the next category.
- 3706 • **Stock monitoring update**—methods used to provide stock-level advice to fishery managers  
3707 between stocks assessments. These analyses include the methods described in Table 5.1, but  
3708 only when they are updated using the most recent catch information to develop new catch  
3709 advice. These are sometimes called partial updates. Because there are no changes in the  
3710 methods or data series in stock monitoring updates, just updated catch data, the conduct and  
3711 review of these analyses should be very routine and intense scrutiny is not warranted.

3712 Because a major focus of this plan is to set priorities for conducting assessments at frequencies and  
3713 levels that are most appropriate for each stock, there is a need to establish a consistent approach to  
3714 tracking and classifying assessments (i.e., everything captured in the “operational stock assessment”  
3715 category). A stock assessment classification system was described in the 2001 SAIP (Mace et al., 2001).  
3716 This system is currently used by NOAA Fisheries to classify individual assessments according to five  
3717 categories, three of which capture the input data used in each assessment, and two for describing the  
3718 assessment approach. The input data are categorized according to catch, abundance, and life history  
3719 data, and the assessment approach is described in terms of the modeling technique used and frequency  
3720 at which the stock is assessed. Overall, this system has proven useful for tracking stock assessments,  
3721 evaluating assessment capacity, and addressing program gaps. For instance, as the preference to  
3722 incorporate ecosystem dynamics into the assessment process has continued to increase, the  
3723 classification system has been used to summarize which stocks already include such information (Box  
3724 5.1).

3725 However, the current assessment classification system has limitations. The level of detail captured in the  
3726 categories is not sufficient to fully summarize assessments. Model configurations are largely driven by  
3727 the available input data, so an expansion of the original data categories is warranted. Also, the original  
3728 assessment model category blends modelling approaches and data inputs. For example, the highest  
3729 level in this category refers to a model that incorporates ecosystem, environmental, spatial, and/or  
3730 seasonal information. However, these types of data can be included using many assessment techniques  
3731 from simple to comprehensive.

3732  
3733 A new Stock Assessment Classification System is proposed and summarized in Table 10.1. This system  
3734 includes the high-level model categorization described in Chapter 5 (Table 5.1), tracks the age of the  
3735 assessments, and expands the categorization of available input data. Appendix A provides a detailed  
3736 description of the levels of each category in Table 10.1.

3737  
3738 **Table 10.1. NOAA Fisheries’ Stock Assessment Classification System.** Seven attributes will be used to  
3739 classify individual stock assessments. Quantitative levels are defined for input data attributes to support  
3740 gap analyses.

3741

|                               | Attribute                   | Level  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>Assessment Application</b> | <b>Model Category</b>       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data-Limited</li> <li>• Index-Based</li> <li>• Aggregate Biomass Dynamics</li> <li>• Virtual Population Analysis</li> <li>• Statistical Catch-at-Length</li> <li>• Statistical Catch-at-Age</li> </ul>                |
|                               | <b>Age</b>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Years since assessment conducted</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Input Data</b>             | <b>Catch</b>                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0. None</li> <li>1. Major gaps preclude use</li> <li>2. Major gaps in some sector(s)</li> <li>3. Minor gaps across sectors</li> <li>4. Minor gaps in some sector(s)</li> <li>5. Near complete knowledge</li> </ol>      |
|                               | <b>Size/Age Composition</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0. None</li> <li>1. Major gaps preclude use</li> <li>2. Support data-limited only</li> <li>3. Gaps, but supports age-structured assessment</li> <li>4. Support fishery composition</li> <li>5. Very complete</li> </ol> |
|                               | <b>Abundance</b>            | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0. None</li> </ol>  |

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Uncertain or expert opinion</li> <li>2. Standardized fishery-dependent</li> <li>3. Limited fishery-independent</li> <li>4. Comprehensive fishery-independent</li> <li>5. Absolute abundance</li> </ol>                         |
| <b>Life History</b>      | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0. None</li> <li>1. Proxy-based</li> <li>2. Empirical and proxy-based</li> <li>3. Mostly empirical estimates</li> <li>4. Track changes over time</li> <li>5. Comprehensive over time and space</li> </ol>                         |
| <b>Ecosystem Linkage</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0. None</li> <li>1. Informative or used to process input data</li> <li>2. Random variation, not mechanistic</li> <li>3. Direct linkage(s)</li> <li>4. Linkage(s) informed by process studies</li> <li>5. Fully coupled</li> </ol> |

3742

3743

3744 Overall, the Stock Assessment Classification System will improve national tracking of NOAA Fisheries’  
 3745 stock assessments and will provide a clear picture of the data available for each assessment. Further, the  
 3746 new categories specific to ecosystem linkages and size and age data will provide a more comprehensive  
 3747 understanding of how these key aspects of fish stock dynamics are being incorporated into stock  
 3748 assessments.

3749

3750 **10.3. Prioritizing stock assessments**

3751 Historically, fish stock assessment prioritization has been conducted following independent regional  
 3752 processes. Each of the eight Regional Fishery Management Councils, in conjunction with their  
 3753 corresponding NOAA Fisheries science centers and regional offices, establish stock assessment  
 3754 schedules for the stocks under their management purview. These organizations utilize independent  
 3755 processes to identify and prioritize stocks in need of assessment. For instance, essentially all stocks  
 3756 managed by the North Pacific Fishery Management Council are assessed annually or biennially. By  
 3757 contrast, due to limited data availability, assessments are infrequent or yet to be conducted on stocks  
 3758 managed by the Caribbean Fishery Management Council. Within these extremes, most regional  
 3759 processes are informed by a multitude of factors when selecting the stocks to be assessed in a given  
 3760 year. Additionally, NOAA Fisheries supports and conducts assessments of stocks managed by state,

3761 interstate, or international organizations. In many cases, the assessment schedules for these stocks are  
3762 established by the partner agencies.

3763  
3764 Given that the socioeconomics, fishery dynamics, and species harvested are unique for each region,  
3765 regional processes must determine assessment schedules. However, using a range of independent  
3766 approaches among the regions is challenging for stakeholders that need to understand why certain  
3767 assessments are conducted in a given year. If each region follows a unique protocol, it is difficult to track  
3768 how assessment schedules are determined. This limits NOAA Fisheries' ability to evaluate stock  
3769 assessment capacity from a national perspective, because the overall demand for stock assessments can  
3770 be unpredictable when various approaches to scheduling are used. For federally managed stocks, annual  
3771 catch limits are a required component of fishery management plans. Yet, NOAA Fisheries' current stock  
3772 assessment capacity is not sufficient to support assessments of all federally managed stocks each year.  
3773 For stocks that are relatively stable over time, it may be unnecessary to conduct annual stock  
3774 assessments; however, to achieve optimum yield for fisheries, many stocks may need annual  
3775 assessments. Using an objective process to establish the list of stocks in need of assessment and the  
3776 frequency at which those assessments should be conducted would provide important guidance for  
3777 NOAA Fisheries to determine how best to allocate federal resources to address regional needs. Thus,  
3778 maintaining a transparent and predictable prioritization process is crucial for maximizing the usefulness  
3779 of overall assessment capacity to meet national mandates.

3780  
3781 **10.3.1 A national protocol for prioritizing stock assessments**

3782 The national prioritization process for stock assessments is based on the concept that it is not necessary  
3783 to conduct the most data-rich, ecosystem-linked assessment for every stock every year. That level of  
3784 effort is not needed to achieve good management of fisheries. Stable stocks and their fisheries get little  
3785 benefit from frequent reassessment. Minor stocks may be of less overall importance relative to the cost  
3786 of an assessment, but they can be managed well enough if they occur in a complex with other, well-  
3787 assessed and well-managed stocks.

3788 NOAA Fisheries has developed a standard protocol for prioritizing fish stock assessments (Methot,  
3789 2015). The purpose of this protocol is to provide an objective framework that will help guide regional  
3790 decisions about which stocks require assessment and the level at which those assessments should be  
3791 conducted. This framework can be adapted to best suit regional needs and is expected to continue to  
3792 evolve. For each region, this national protocol represents one of many potential factors to consider  
3793 when determining assessment schedules. However, by using this standardized approach, there will be  
3794 an objective basis against which difficult or controversial decisions can be evaluated.

3795 This section, along with Tables 10.2 and 10.3, provide a brief summary of the prioritization protocol.  
3796 Section 10.3.2 then expands upon the protocol by describing a process for setting target assessment  
3797 levels for each stock. Thus, this document should be used along with Methot (2015) to fully understand  
3798 and implement the national prioritization process.

3799 A summary of the five main elements of the prioritization protocol are provided in Table 10.2. NOAA  
3800 Fisheries is pursuing full implementation of the prioritization protocol, and this process is a crucial piece  
3801 of the NGSa enterprise described in this document. The original process described by Methot (2015)  
3802 uses 14 factors (Table 10.3) and combines them using formulas that identify target assessment  
3803 frequencies for each stock, as well as scores and ranks that establish relative priorities for stocks  
3804 needing assessments. Additionally, the factor concerning the presence of new information can guide  
3805 decisions about whether an assessment should be conducted as a routine update, a more involved  
3806 benchmark assessment, or addressed separately in a research assessment track (10.5.2).

3807 Overall, regional planners should aim to achieve a feasible workload that addresses the highest  
3808 priorities. For example, a mix that includes a few new and/or benchmark assessments and many more  
3809 routine updates is likely manageable under current assessment capacity. Conducting assessments at a  
3810 higher frequency than is proposed or on stocks that can be managed with minimal baseline monitoring  
3811 is unnecessary and represents an inefficient use of assessment and management resources.

3812

3813  
3814

**Table 10.2.** Overview of the national protocol for prioritizing fish stock assessments.

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <h2>1. Who</h2>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• NOAA Fisheries in collaboration with regional experts and managers conduct prioritization in each region</li></ul>  |
| <h2>2. What</h2> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Determine and include the stocks that require assessments versus those that can be sufficiently managed through baseline monitoring</li></ul>   |
| <h2>3. When</h2> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Intended to inform the scheduling of annual assessments</li><li>• Total annual effort required for the prioritization process will decrease after initial implementation</li></ul>  |
| <h2>4. How</h2>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Regional experts develop scores for 14 factors</li><li>• 9 factors establish target assessment frequencies</li><li>• Managers develop weights for 12 factors, including assessment frequency, to reflect regional priorities</li><li>• Calculate and rank weighted scores for 12 factors</li><li>• Use results as objective guidance for scheduling assessments</li></ul> |

3815  
3816

3817 **Table 10.3.** The 14 factors used in NOAA Fisheries’ national stock assessment prioritization protocol, 9 of  
3818 which are used for determining target assessment frequency and 12 are used to establish priority for  
3819 assessments.

| Factor                                 | Scoring Range | Scoring Based On  | Target Assessment Frequency | Determine Annual Priorities |
|--|---------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Commercial Fishery Importance          | 0 to 5        | National catch and value databases; calculated as $\log_{10}(1 + \text{landed catch value})$                | X                           | X                           |
| Recreational Fishery Importance        | 0 to 5        | Regional recreational fisheries expert opinion  | X                           | X                           |
| Importance to Subsistence              | 0 to 5        | Regional fisheries expert opinion   | X                           | X                           |
| Rebuilding Status                      | 0 or 1        | National stock status database  | X                           | X                           |
| Constituent Demand                     | 0 to 5        | Regional fisheries expert opinion   | X                           | X                           |
| Non-Catch Value                        | 0 to 5        | Regional fisheries expert opinion   | X                           | X                           |
| Relative Stock Abundance               | 1 to 5        | Most recent spawning biomass and target/threshold levels, as available from SIS database                    |                             | X                           |
| Relative Fishing Mortality             | 1 to 5        | Most recent fishing mortality estimates and limit levels, as available from SIS database                    |                             | X                           |
| Key Role in Ecosystem                  | 1 to 5        | Maximum of bottom-up and top-down components; assigned by regional fisheries expert opinion                 | X                           | X                           |
| Unexpected Changes in Stock Indicators | 0 to 5        | Regional fisheries expert opinion, where indicators are available   |                             | X                           |
| New Type of Information                | 0 to 5        | Regional fisheries expert opinion   |                             | X                           |
| Years Assessment Overdue               | 0 to 10       | Calculated as: year for setting priorities - year of last assessment - target assessment frequency + 1 year |                             | X                           |
| Mean Age in Catch                      | value         | Recent average of mean age; direct measurement or assessment estimates                                      | X                           |                             |
| Stock Variability                      | -1 to +1      | Coefficient of variation (CV) for recruitment from assessment estimates                                     | X                           |                             |

3820  
3821 \*SIS = Species Information System

### 3822 **10.3.2. Stock assessment targets—an expansion of the national prioritization protocol**

3823 As described in *Prioritizing Fish Stock Assessments* (Methot 2015), elements of the national prioritization  
3824 process require further development. In general, there is a need to stress that the prioritization process  
3825 is one of several decision-making tools being used in federal fisheries management, including already  
3826 established regional prioritization processes (the national process can provide additional information).  
3827 To maintain consistency and capitalize on multiple efforts, it is important that the results of other  
3828 national exercises, such as the climate vulnerability analyses recommended in the National Climate  
3829 Science Strategy (Link et al., 2015) be officially included in the stock assessment prioritization process.  
3830 These results can be used to help guide expert opinion in developing scores for several existing factors  
3831 (e.g., “Unexpected changes in stock indicators” and “New type of information”) and in the new steps  
3832 described below.

3833 A primary focus in the prioritization document (Methot 2015) was to describe a process for setting  
3834 target assessment frequencies. This process can be summarized as follows:

- 3835 1. Begin with mean age in catch (or proxy)
- 3836 2. Multiply by a regional scaling factor (default = 0.5)
- 3837 3. Adjust for recruitment variability
- 3838 a. -1 year: Recruitment CV > 0.9
- 3839 b. +1 year: Recruitment CV < 0.3
- 3840 4. Adjust for fishery importance
- 3841 a. -1 year: Stock in top 33% of regional fishery importance
- 3842 b. +1 year: Stock in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
- 3843 5. Adjust for ecosystem importance
- 3844 a. -1 year: Stock in top 33% of ecosystem importance
- 3845 b. +1 year: Stock in bottom 33% of ecosystem importance
- 3846 6. Results will be between 1 and a maximum of 10 years

3847  
3848 There is no need to refine the process for setting target assessment frequencies here, but what follows  
3849 are several new steps in the prioritization process that serve as guidance for setting target assessment  
3850 levels. These new steps were developed because the prioritization document indicated that this aspect  
3851 of prioritization would be developed in this revised SAIP. By expanding the process here, stock  
3852 assessment prioritization will be aligned with the design of a next generation stock assessment (NGSA)  
3853 enterprise.

3854 The assessment level essentially reflects the types of data included in an assessment, so in effect a  
3855 target assessment level establishes priorities for data collection and analytical techniques. The Stock  
3856 Assessment Classification System (Table 10.1) describes how comprehensive each assessment was  
3857 conducted according to five data input categories. Thus, to align the national prioritization protocol with  
3858 the NGSA enterprise, the process for setting target assessment levels described next directly  
3859 corresponds to the five categories of the classification system. This approach will facilitate a  
3860 comprehensive gap analysis that compares current assessment levels to target levels.

3861 The following guidance is proposed to describe how the national prioritization protocol can be used to  
3862 establish targets for each of the five stock assessment categories. This guidance serves as an addendum  
3863 to Methot (2015) and should be implemented as part of that process. The process described here is for  
3864 setting baseline target assessment levels that should be evaluated and considered in the context of  
3865 other existing information. For example, the results of other strategic efforts, such as NOAA Fisheries'  
3866 Climate Vulnerability Analyses (Link et al., 2015), may be used to adjust baseline targets. Also, decision  
3867 analysis tools, such as management strategy evaluations, represent comprehensive approaches that can  
3868 be used to evaluate data tradeoffs and determine target assessment levels. When available, the results  
3869 of more thorough research and decision analyses should serve a primary role in establishing target  
3870 assessment levels. Adjustments to this approach to target setting will become apparent as testing and  
3871 implementation develop in each region. However, after a consistent approach is fully implemented, it is

3872 anticipated that targets will remain relatively stable over time. Significant shifts in targets will most likely  
3873 be a result of notable changes, such as emerging fisheries, substantial changes in market dynamics,  
3874 major ecosystem shifts, or the development of groundbreaking technologies and/or research.

3875 **Target catch level:** Because most stock assessment models assume a high degree of certainty, if not  
3876 complete certainty in the amount of fish removed by the fishery, it is important to strive for complete  
3877 knowledge of catch when stocks are being assessed with traditional statistical methods. However, when  
3878 a stock is subject to little or no fishing, limited catch monitoring may be appropriate. Given these fairly  
3879 stark needs regarding catch monitoring, the following describes a simple framework for establishing  
3880 target catch levels. The target levels for catch and all following attributes correspond to the levels  
3881 described in Table 10.1. Various levels for the factors in Table 10.1 were not considered to be  
3882 appropriate targets; thus, there may not be a scenario in the following tables that corresponds to each  
3883 level in Table 10.1 (i.e., certain levels are skipped).  
3884

| Target Catch Level | Stock Scenario  |
|--------------------|---|
| 0                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks not caught as target or bycatch in any fishery</li> </ul>   |
| 2                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks subject to very minimal catch so that fishing-induced mortality most likely does not have measurable effects on stock dynamics</li> </ul> |
| 5                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All other stocks</li> </ul>  |

3885  
3886 **Target size and/or age composition level:** Stock assessments that include size or age composition data  
3887 produce more complete descriptions of the effects of fishing on fish stocks than assessments that do not  
3888 include this information. Also, if natural mortality is estimated within a stock assessment model,  
3889 including composition data may improve the ability to estimate this mortality (Magnusson and Hilborn,  
3890 2007). However, collecting and processing composition data requires significant allocation of resources,  
3891 so it may be unnecessary to include this information in assessments of lower profile stocks. Three of the  
3892 four factors that determine target assessment frequency from the prioritization protocol (recruitment  
3893 variability, fishery importance, and ecosystem importance) represent metrics that, together, are useful  
3894 for determining the importance of age/size composition data. The remaining assessment frequency  
3895 factor (mean age in the catch) is not as useful. Thus, to establish target levels for size and/or age  
3896 composition data, the following formula is recommended to calculate an importance metric, which  
3897 adjusts the target assessment frequency equation from Methot (2015) by excluding the scaled mean age  
3898 in the catch:  
3899

3900  
3901  
3902  
3903  
3904  
3905  
3906  
3907  
3908  
3909  
3910  
3911  
3912  
3913  
3914  
3915

***Calculating Size/Age Importance***

- 1. Set Size/Age Importance = 0**
- 2. Adjust for recruitment variability (using the coefficient of variation – CV)**
  - a. -1 when recruitment CV > 0.9
  - b. +1 when recruitment CV < 0.3
- 3. Adjust for Fishery Importance**
  - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional fishery importance
  - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
- 4. Adjust for Ecosystem Importance**
  - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional ecosystem importance
  - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance

Possible values range from -3 to 3

| <b>Target<br/>Size/Age<br/>Composition<br/>Level</b> | <b>Stock Scenario</b>  |
|--|--|
| <b>0</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks that are not a priority for assessments</li> </ul> |
| <b>2</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks with Size/Age Importance &gt; 1</li> </ul>         |
| <b>4</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks with Size/Age Importance from -1 to 1</li> </ul>   |
| <b>5</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks with Size/Age Importance &lt; -1</li> </ul>        |

3916  
3917  
3918  
3919  
3920  
3921  
3922  
3923  
3924

**Target abundance level:** When stock assessments incorporate indices of abundance or biomass, the indices are used as observed changes over time (i.e., input data about abundance or biomass patterns). Thus, assessment results can be biased when observed trends do not reflect actual dynamics, and it has been shown that fishery catch rates can be misleading about abundance (Cooke and Beddington, 1984). In some cases, estimates of absolute abundance should be included in an assessment rather than indices of relative abundance. Further, in the absence of stock assessments, abundance trends serve as useful indicators of stock dynamics for baseline monitoring. The usefulness of abundance data and the limitations associated with fishery catch rates suggest that fishery-independent monitoring of

3925 abundance should be in place for most managed stocks. Thus, in the following scenario we recommend  
3926 high targets for abundance levels, except for stocks not subject to fishing mortality.  
3927

| Target Abundance Level | Stock Scenario  |
|------------------------|---|
| 0                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks not caught as target or bycatch in any fishery and in the bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance</li> </ul>  |
| 3                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks subject to very minimal catch so that fishing-induced mortality most likely does not have measurable effects on stock dynamics</li> </ul>   |
| 4                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks subject to fishing-induced mortality and not in the top 33% of regional fishery or ecosystem importance</li> </ul>  |
| 5                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks in the top 33% of regional fishery or ecosystem importance</li> <li>Stocks subject to measurable fishing-induced mortality, but with uncertain catch data (Catch Level &lt; 3)</li> <li>Stocks for which absolute abundance estimates are feasible</li> </ul> |

3928  
3929 **Target life-history level:** High-quality information about a stock's life history facilitates the ability to  
3930 isolate and evaluate fishing impacts, and improves overall assessment accuracy and precision. The  
3931 highest levels of life-history data should be reserved for stocks that require more complete evaluations  
3932 of the effects of fishing, while stocks with relatively lower importance can be successfully managed with  
3933 less detailed life-history information. The approach to determining size/age composition levels is useful  
3934 here, and in fact, there are strong connections between the role of life history and size/age composition  
3935 data in an assessment model. Therefore, the approach to setting target life-history levels mimics that for  
3936 size/age composition.  
3937

| Target Life History Level | Stock Scenario   |
|---------------------------|--|
| 0                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks that are not a priority for assessments</li> </ul> |
| 2                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks with Size/Age Importance &gt; 1</li> </ul>         |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| <b>4</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Stocks with Size/Age Importance from -1 to 1</li></ul> |
| <b>5</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Stocks with Size/Age Importance &lt; -1</li></ul>      |

3938

3939 **Target ecosystem linkage level:** Determining when and how to directly account for ecosystem dynamics  
3940 within a stock assessment is not a straightforward process. In some cases, unexplained drifts in  
3941 assessment results (e.g., retrospective biases) indicate that additional factors should be included, but  
3942 often there is not sufficient information to identify the specific drivers that were overlooked. In other  
3943 cases, research studies have described connections between specific ecosystem dynamics and stock  
3944 productivity, but the ability to model and/or forecast the relationship may be limited. Further, it has  
3945 been shown in certain scenarios that including ecosystem factors may not always improve the ability to  
3946 achieve management objectives (Punt et al., 2013). In many cases, empirically based approaches that  
3947 use ecosystem information to guide management decisions may be more appropriate than to directly  
3948 include that information in the analytical framework. As mentioned in Chapter 8, decisions on creating  
3949 ecosystem linkages in stock assessments are made in the context of the following range of decisions:

3950

- 3951 1. Based on the stock's value, status, and biology, is there an incentive to expand its assessment to  
3952 include ecosystem or socioeconomic factors?
- 3953 2. Is there evidence to suggest that stock or fishery dynamics are tightly coupled with some  
3954 variable ecosystem or socioeconomic feature?
- 3955 3. Are data available to model this relationship within the assessment framework?
- 3956 4. Can ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be incorporated in a way that maintains a  
3957 manageable assessment model?
- 3958 5. Can the relationship between stock, fishery, and ecosystem or socioeconomic dynamics be  
3959 forecasted with at least a moderate degree of certainty?

3960

3961 In general, the standard for including ecosystem information is lowest for Decision 2 above, but raises  
3962 through Decision 5, which itself presents a substantial challenge to linking assessments to dynamic  
3963 ecosystem features. However, if the answer to Decision 2 is "yes," but there is not sufficient data or  
3964 capabilities to meet Decisions 3, 4, or 5, then gaps have been identified, which then may be addressed  
3965 to improve the assessment.

3966

3967 Given the complexity of marine systems, the challenges associated with creating and forecasting reliable  
3968 mechanistic ecosystem linkages in stock assessments, and variable benefits to incorporating these  
3969 linkages into assessments, decision analysis tools (such as MSEs) should be used for evaluating when  
3970 and how to expand single-species stock assessment models to include ecosystem features. When  
3971 available, the results of these analyses should serve as default advice for guiding target levels for the  
3972 ecosystem linkage category. In general, stocks that are good candidates for linking assessments to

3973 ecosystem dynamics include those that serve as key forage, that rely heavily on a specific habitat during  
3974 one or more life stages, and that are particularly sensitive to fluctuations or shifts in environmental  
3975 conditions (e.g., temperature). Further, higher profile stocks warrant strong consideration of ecosystem  
3976 linkages to maximize economic opportunity while being responsive to potential changes or shifts in  
3977 dynamics, thereby ensuring long-term resiliency. The role of ecosystem variability and change should be  
3978 at least considered in the development or improvement of every stock assessment. However, in the  
3979 absence of results from more complete decision analyses, we offer the following approach that uses an  
3980 Ecosystem Linkage Index (ELI) that builds mainly off the information already being assembled for stock  
3981 assessment prioritization.

### ***Calculating Ecosystem Linkage Index (ELI)***

- 1. Set ELI = 0**
- 2. Adjust for recruitment variability (using the coefficient of variation – CV)**
  - a. -1 when recruitment CV > 0.9
  - b. +1 when recruitment CV < 0.3
- 3. Adjust for Fishery Importance**
  - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional fishery importance
  - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional fishery importance
- 4. Adjust for Ecosystem Importance**
  - a. -1 when stock is in top 33% of regional ecosystem importance
  - b. +1 when stock is in bottom 33% of regional ecosystem importance
- 5. Adjust for Habitat Association**
  - a. -1 if it is clear that a stock relies on a particular habitat niche that is sensitive to ecosystem change during one or more life stages (e.g., anadromous species)
  - b. +1 if stock is thought to easily adapt to changes in physical properties of the ecosystem
- 6. Adjust for Model Issues**
  - a. -1 if current assessment model exhibits issues that may be appropriately addressed by including ecosystem dynamics (e.g., retrospective or residual patterns)

Possible values range from -5 to 4

**Target  
Ecosystem**

**Stock Scenario**

| Linkage Level |  |
|---------------|--|
| 0             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks that are not a priority for assessments</li> </ul> |
| 1             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks with ELI &gt; 2</li> </ul>                         |
| 2             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks with ELI from -3 to 1</li> </ul>                   |
| 4             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks with ELI = -4</li> </ul>                           |
| 5             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stocks with ELI = -5</li> </ul>                           |

4010 **\*NOTE: This approach should be used only when more complete research or decision analyses, such**  
 4011 **as MSEs, are not available to guide decisions about creating ecosystem linkages.**

4012  
 4013 If the ELI suggests a certain stock is a high priority for building ecosystem linkages into the assessment,  
 4014 but there is not the capability to do so, then this may indicate a need for additional research, data  
 4015 collection, and management strategy evaluations to determine how to address the potential gap.  
 4016

4017 **10.4.0 Establishing a right-sized stock assessment enterprise**

4018 The new Stock Assessment Classification System (Table 10.1, Appendix A) and expanded assessment  
 4019 prioritization protocol provide a national framework that will inform strategic decisions regarding the  
 4020 national stock assessment enterprise. The classification system will be used to identify how stock  
 4021 assessments are currently being conducted, and the expanded prioritization protocol will be used to set  
 4022 target levels for each assessment. This national framework is meant to enhance, not replace, ongoing  
 4023 regional approaches to determining assessment priorities, which involve important collaborations  
 4024 among NOAA Fisheries, management organizations, and stakeholders. Discussions among these regional  
 4025 expert groups will necessarily remain the primary source of input for setting assessment objectives, but  
 4026 the framework described here offers a consistent planning tool that supports discussions about target  
 4027 levels. By comparing existing levels to targets, regional stock assessment gaps can be identified and  
 4028 prioritized. The majority of these gaps will concern data for assessments, but some will be related to  
 4029 research and modeling improvements. Because there are ongoing regional processes and multiple  
 4030 strategic efforts underway at NOAA Fisheries (Figure 1.1), the stock assessment gaps identified through  
 4031 this process will be evaluated alongside the results of these other efforts.  
 4032

4033 The initial work needed to collect the information for each stock is substantial, but after it is collected  
 4034 and a data management infrastructure is established, updating and maintaining stock-specific details  
 4035 should be fairly straightforward. The intention is that information will be reviewed and updated  
 4036 annually, if necessary, to inform near-term assessment scheduling and investments. The process will

4037 likely evolve in the initial years as it is tested and implemented until it produces objective results that  
4038 are most useful to regional planners.

4039

## 4040 **10.5. Standardized approaches**

4041 The process of conducting stock assessments in NOAA Fisheries has developed somewhat independently  
4042 by region and management jurisdiction. Also, many assessment processes have expanded in scope over  
4043 time to include more data as enhanced data collection programs and research studies have become  
4044 available, involved more participants, and included more thorough, independent, scientific reviews of  
4045 the assessments. As regional processes developed and expanded, they became associated with varying  
4046 degrees of efficiency. In most cases, differences in efficiency across regions can be attributed to regional  
4047 attributes, such as the number of states and partners involved in monitoring catches, number and types  
4048 of fisheries, and diversity of species and habitats. This variability across regions limits the degree to  
4049 which assessments can be standardized. Nevertheless, establishing and using more standardized  
4050 approaches may improve efficiency overall and contribute to a more transparent and understood  
4051 process.

4052 A high throughput of assessments cannot be accomplished if lead assessment scientists must be  
4053 engaged in building input data sets from raw fishery and survey data, and if the assessment methods  
4054 themselves are in constant flux. A mature assessment enterprise needs to separate research efforts  
4055 where innovations can be freely explored from operational efforts where assessment results are  
4056 delivered to fishery managers. Standardized data systems can keep a wide range of indicators updated  
4057 and can deliver processed data in a form ready to be used in assessment models. Standardized models  
4058 make it easier for less experienced analysts to complete assessments, easier for fuller development of  
4059 the model itself, easier for reviewers of model results, and easier to communicate to constituents and  
4060 managers. Yet, standardization cannot stand in the way of innovation. There needs to be a parallel track  
4061 for conducting research on population dynamics, statistics, and other fields; and a deliberate process by  
4062 which good research is transitioned into the operational models. Also, standardized processes should  
4063 not be completely rigid so they can accommodate the high diversity of stocks, fisheries, jurisdictions,  
4064 and so on.

4065

### 4066 **10.5.1 Stock assessment analytical tools**

4067 Over the past several decades, the analytical tools and approaches used in fishery stock assessments  
4068 have evolved rapidly. These advances have been a benefit to sustainable fisheries management, and  
4069 growth in this field will only continue. Development of stock assessment software and tools, including  
4070 those for data processing, running assessment models, and developing forecasts, are typically  
4071 performed by stock assessment and fishery scientists (as opposed to software developers). It is crucial  
4072 that assessment scientists be involved in these developments, because not only do they need complete  
4073 conceptual and practical understanding of the tools, they also have the knowledge necessary to design

4074 tools that are applicable in specific assessment scenarios. However, because fishery assessment and  
4075 management systems have developed according to a regional design, many regions have produced tools  
4076 with very similar features. NOAA Fisheries has numerous scientists with a wide variety of expertise and  
4077 capabilities for developing assessment tools, and development often may draw from a vast professional  
4078 network that extends outside NOAA. With a capacity at this scale, tremendous efficiency could be  
4079 gained by a unified, community approach to sharing expertise and developing assessment tools. This  
4080 approach would also facilitate increased use of fewer standard tools, which would improve efficiency in  
4081 both conducting analyses and in understanding and reviewing the assessments. Additionally, partnering  
4082 with professional software developers could facilitate enhanced functionality, maintenance, stability,  
4083 and also free up time for NOAA scientists to engage in important assessment and fishery-related  
4084 research projects. The recommendations presented in Box 10.1 relate to the development, provision,  
4085 and use of stock assessment analytical tools.

4086  
4087 ***Box 10.1. Recommendations for Development of Analytical  
Tools***

- 4088
- 4089 **1. Provide national coordination of stock assessment tools and use professional software development practices.**
  - 4090 **2. Develop tools in community and cloud-based environments to capitalize on diverse expertise from a variety of collaborators.**
  - 4091 **3. Use standardized, tested, verified, and fully documented tools in operational assessments to facilitate efficient and well-understood analyses.**
  - 4092 **4. Increase opportunities for NOAA scientists to conduct research related to assessment analyses.**
- 4093  
4094  
4095  
4096

4097 **10.5.2 The stock assessment process**

4098 Fishery stock assessments represent an applied operational science that provides fundamental  
4099 information to fishery managers for setting harvest regulations. Industries, small businesses, and  
4100 individuals plan around these management decisions; thus, it is imperative that the scientific advice be  
4101 timely, transparent, and reliable. Further, to facilitate planning, many stakeholders value long-term  
4102 stability in regulations. Given the role of stock assessments in fishery management, it is important that  
4103 consistent, well understood, and thoroughly reviewed methods be used to conduct operational  
4104 assessments. The process by which assessments are conducted currently varies by region, which is  
4105 suitable given that fisheries management is an inherently regional process. However, some assessment  
4106 processes can further be improved in regard to one or more of the preferred qualities (timeliness,  
4107 transparency, and/or stability).

4108  
4109 The framework for conducting and reviewing stock assessments described in Table 10.4 is  
4110 recommended as a general structure for regions to use and adapt according to their needs. The driving  
4111 concept behind this framework is to provide a streamlined approach to updating scientific advice for  
4112 managers using *operational assessments*. Major changes to model configurations, data sources, etc.  
4113 would then be evaluated in *research assessments* that do not produce the scientific advice that is being  
4114 used for management. The operational assessments then use methods that have already been  
4115 independently reviewed. These assessments can be applied to develop scientific advice for fishery  
4116 managers without the additional scrutiny of the methods and would be reviewed with a focus on the  
4117 application of those methods. The research assessments are evaluated for their usefulness to consider  
4118 in future operational assessments.

4119  
4120 **Table 10.4.** Recommended process for conducting operational and research stock assessments.

|                    | <b>Operational Assessment</b>  | <b>Research Assessment</b>  |
|--------------------|--|---|
| <b>Preparation</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks selected for assessment based on results of national assessment prioritization protocol.</li> <li>• Streamlined, integrated data systems provide efficient access to data in formats needed for assessments and are publicly accessible and transparent to facilitate additional investigations.</li> <li>• General tools provide timely public access to data summaries and figures.</li> <li>• The suite of analytical tools used in the assessment is accessible, documented, tested, and independently reviewed prior to use.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Occur as needed to improve operational assessments.</li> <li>• Scoped to evaluate, test, document, and review potential changes to operational assessments (not to provide advice to managers).</li> <li>• Connected to research recommendations from previous operational assessment; evaluated soon after completion to prioritize importance and feasibility of addressing recommendations in a research assessment.</li> <li>• Broad interdisciplinary engagement upfront is encouraged so a range of expertise can be used to inform assessment improvements.</li> <li>• Stakeholder involvement is also encouraged so outside data, analyses, and ideas can be evaluated, and trust in potential changes is built from the beginning.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Conduct</b>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Designated analysts use a suite of previously reviewed procedures and data sets.</li> <li>• Assessment model or suite of models configured according to previously accepted specifications.</li> <li>• Minor changes to previous</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New procedures, data sets, and configurations are made available to address issues with operational assessments and/or make general improvements.</li> <li>• The scope of improvements may include ecosystem and socioeconomic drivers and considerations, and</li> </ul>  |

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
|  | <p>approaches are acceptable, especially to account for issues that may arise as a result of additional years of data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A full exploration of model sensitivity is not necessary as that should have been conducted during the research assessment (the accepted suite of models is used to characterize observational and structural uncertainties).</li> <li>• Primary objectives are to update stock abundance forecast and provide probability distributions of future catch based on the harvest control rule and characterize recent and projected overfishing and overfished statuses.</li> </ul>   | <p>management strategy evaluations represent one framework recommended for use in these investigations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improvements may include harvest policy investigations and/or use of simpler methods to achieve management objectives and/or use as interim approaches between more involved assessments.</li> <li>• Research assessments should be applied to particular stocks and evaluated against the recent operational assessment (using the actual assessment data at some point) to determine the influence of the proposed improvements (both long-term and short-term effects should be evaluated).</li> <li>• For research assessments to be accepted into the next operational assessment there must be a long-term commitment to collect and provide the accepted data and methods.</li> </ul>   |
| <p><b>Documentation and Review</b></p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation of results should be concise with information relevant for fishery management summarized clearly upfront.</li> <li>• Analytical techniques should be summarized very briefly with reference to original descriptions.</li> <li>• Data sources can also be referenced and do not need full descriptions, just depiction of major trends.</li> <li>• Uncertainty should be characterized for all results, and decision tables should be used to summarize uncertainty and risk associated with a range of management decisions.</li> <li>• Anomalies, concerns, and research recommendations documented for future consideration.</li> <li>• Review is streamlined for quality assurance by a standing</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• New procedures, data, and findings with application to particular stocks should be fully documented to support use and serve as reference in future operational assessments.</li> <li>• Documentation may be prepared as an assessment report, technical memorandum, and/or peer-reviewed publication equal to the scope and novelty of changes.</li> <li>• Unresolved issues and additional research recommendations should be documented to inform future research assessments.</li> <li>• Independent, comprehensive review is conducted to provide objective evaluation of proposed changes.</li> <li>• Review panels may include some regional expertise, but should be independent of analysts and should include fully external reviewers (such as through the CIE) equal to the degree of controversy and novelty of the proposed changes.</li> <li>• Review panels should focus on the</li> </ul> |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  | <p>committee of regional experts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Review is not intended to make harvest-level recommendations, determine stock status, or declare whether the best scientific information available was used, but rather to evaluate whether the previously approved approach was applied correctly.</li><li>• If the new application of an operational assessment is not deemed appropriate for management, a default approach to generating catch advice should be established and agreed to upfront.</li></ul> | <p>scientific merits and feasibility of implementing proposed changes relative to current operational assessments with less of a focus on interpretations, applications, and consequences of assessment results.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Review panels should not expect all issues to be resolved and therefore should not be asked to accept/reject the entire assessment, but rather should evaluate each component to facilitate future use of one or more proposed changes.</li><li>• Major changes identified by review panels should not be expected to be addressed immediately but should be considered as additional research recommendations.</li></ul> |
|--|--|--|

4121  
4122  
4123  
4124

Completion of a technically accurate assessment is not the final step of an effective assessment. The results must be communicated to a diverse range of constituents to achieve success.

4125  
4126  
4127  
4128  
4129  
4130  
4131  
4132  
4133  
4134  
4135  
4136  
4137  
4138  
4139  
4140  
4141  
4142  
4143  
4144

Because the operational assessment process is intended to be as efficient as possible, there is a need for standardized approaches to documentation. Yet, to trust the results, affected constituents must get enough information about the assessment and the data and methods supporting it. Fishery managers also must receive assessment products that clearly describe the risks and benefits of possible controversial decisions. Fellow scientists must have access to detailed results in order to conduct meta-analyses and other comparative studies. Deliberate development of the right communication product for each audience is needed. A succinct and standard reporting template can reduce the time required for compiling results and facilitate access of results to fishery managers and other interested parties, not just regionally, but nationally as well. Further, by using a standardized template, the primary assessment results can be compared and evaluated across stocks. This step may be particularly important for making management decisions within a fishery management plan that contains multiple stocks. Managers and stakeholders may also benefit from easy access to other information and analyses, not just the primary stock assessment results (e.g., the prioritization results and stock-specific targets described previously, summaries of important stock indicators, and climate vulnerability analyses). Appendix B provides a recommended template (completed with a case study) that attempts to summarize the results of an operational stock assessment as well as additional information. This template attempts to provide brief organized access to the primary information for which most assessments are accessed, and its use would provide consistent national representation of NOAA Fisheries' stock assessment results.

4145 Finally, regardless of whether operational or research assessments are conducted, scientific products  
4146 used to support fishery management should have a level of review that corresponds with the degree of  
4147 novelty of the work, and the controversy and importance of the resulting management action. Extensive  
4148 review processes have been developed in all regions (Chapter 6), and some have become so intensive  
4149 that the throughput of assessments is constrained. Effective certification that the best scientific  
4150 products are being used can be attained with a modified review approach built around the separation of  
4151 research from operations and the use of standardized data and methods. The most extensive and  
4152 intensive review involving highly independent external reviewers should be focused on the research  
4153 products that are designing and developing new methods. Here the alternative experiences and  
4154 backgrounds of the external reviewers can make the greatest contribution to improved methods. Then,  
4155 application of these accepted standardized methods to the most recent standardized data can receive  
4156 sufficient quality assurance when reviewed by knowledgeable regional experts, including council's  
4157 Scientific and Statistical Committees, who have good knowledge of regional data sources and  
4158 assessments for other stocks in that region.

4159  
4160 Whether comprehensive and fully independent, or streamlined through standing committees, reviews  
4161 are most beneficial when guided by clear terms of reference (ToR). These terms should ensure that  
4162 reviews focus on the science conducted to support fisheries management given the information  
4163 available at the time. Although reviewers can provide important research recommendations, those  
4164 recommendations should be reserved for future research assessments, and current reviews should not  
4165 be contingent on incorporation of those recommendations. Further, it is not appropriate for review  
4166 panels to perform management actions, such as determining stock status, harvest recommendations, or  
4167 formal declarations about the assessment representing the best scientific information available. The  
4168 focus of the review is to determine which, if any, major issues may limit the usefulness of the  
4169 assessment for fishery managers relative to what is already available. Along those lines, reviews should  
4170 be conducted in a way that facilitates use of components of the stock assessment, rather than a simple  
4171 accept/reject of the entire package. To promote an effective and efficient review of operational stock  
4172 assessments, Box 10.2 includes a suite of generic statements that are recommended for inclusion in  
4173 review terms of reference. These statements intend to help focus reviews so that they are most helpful  
4174 to the assessment–management process. For research assessments, there is less of a need to constrain  
4175 the peer review ToR because the scope of potential changes to an assessment are broad and can be  
4176 evaluated in a variety of ways. However, it should be very clear in ToR for research assessments that the  
4177 review is focused on the proposed changes and whether they would result in an improved operational  
4178 stock assessment.

## 4179 4180 **10.6. Conclusions**

4181 In this chapter, a number of process-oriented changes are recommended that may affect NOAA  
4182 Fisheries' stock assessment programs as well as our fishery management partners and stakeholders.  
4183 These recommendations have been carefully vetted with the overall goal of creating a timelier, more

4184 efficient, and more effective stock assessment enterprise. Although adoption of these recommendations  
4185 may require an investment of time and resources from NOAA Fisheries and our partners, the long-term  
4186 gains will offset the short-term costs.  
4187  
4188

4189  
4190  
4191  
4192  
4193  
4194  
4195  
4196  
4197  
4198  
4199  
4200  
4201  
4202  
4203  
4204  
4205  
4206  
4207  
4208  
4209  
4210  
4211

***Box 10.2. Recommended statements to include in operational stock assessment review terms of reference (ToR)***

- Determine, according to the best of your knowledge, if all data considered for use in the stock assessment were made available with sufficient time to review and evaluate their utility to the assessment. If not, please explain.
- Of the data considered for inclusion in the assessment, determine if final decisions on inclusion/exclusion of particular data were appropriate and justified. If not, please explain.
- Determine whether the final data that were included in the stock assessment were prepared and processed appropriately, and potential sources of bias were addressed and/or documented appropriately. If not, please explain.
- Given the data selected for use in the assessment, determine if the methods used to analyze those data and characterize uncertainty were appropriate and sufficient for accomplishing the following:  
(For each category, if you feel the methods were not appropriate or if previous analyses are more appropriate, please explain.)
  - Estimating biological reference points related to stock size
  - Estimating biological reference points related to fishing intensity
  - Estimating stock size in the final assessment year
  - Estimating fishing intensity in the final assessment year
  - Estimating an historical time series of stock size
  - Estimating an historical time series of fishing intensity
- If applicable, please review the methods used for forecasting, including the characterization of uncertainty, to determine whether they were appropriate and sufficient for the following:  
(For each category, if you feel the methods were not appropriate or if previous analyses are more appropriate, please explain.)
  - Developing harvest recommendations for the next 1–4 years
  - Developing harvest recommendations beyond 4 years
  - Projecting biomass relative to corresponding biological reference point(s)
  - Projecting fishing intensity relative to corresponding biological reference point(s)

\*Note: The structure of ToR in review of research stock assessments should be less constrained than ToR for operational assessments, and should be designed to focus the review on any changes to the assessment that are being proposed and whether these changes would likely improve the next operational assessment.

4212 **References**

- 4213 Link, J. S., R. Griffis, and S. Busch (eds). 2015. NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy. NOAA Tech.  
4214 Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-155, 70p.
- 4215 Magnusson, A., and R. Hilborn. 2007. What makes fisheries data informative? *Fish Fish.* 8:337–358.  
4216 <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-2979.2007.00258.x>  
4217
- 4218 Methot, Richard D. Jr. (ed.). 2015. Prioritizing fish stock assessments. NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-F/SPO-  
4219 152, 31 p.
- 4220
- 4221

4222 **SECTION IV. SUMMARY,**  
4223 **RECOMMENDATIONS, AND**  
4224 **IMPLEMENTATION**

4225

4226

4227 PLACEHOLDER, TO BE COMPLETED

4228

4229

## Acronyms

|      |   |      |   |
|------|---|------|---|
| 4230 | <b>ABC</b> – Acceptable Biological Catch            | 4268 | <b>LMRCSC</b> – Living Marine Resources Cooperative     |
| 4231 | <b>ACLs</b> – Annual Catch Limits                   | 4269 | Science Center  |
| 4232 | <b>ADMB</b> – Auto Differentiated Model Builder     | 4270 | <b>MAFMC</b> – Mid-Atlantic Fishery Management          |
| 4233 | <b>AFSC</b> – Alaska Fisheries Science Center       | 4271 | Council   |
| 4234 | <b>AKFIN</b> – Alaska Fisheries Information Network | 4272 | <b>MARMAP</b> – Marine Resource Monitoring and          |
| 4235 | <b>AKRO</b> – Alaska Regional Office                | 4273 | Assessment Program                                      |
| 4236 | <b>ASMFC</b> – Atlantic States Marine Fisheries     | 4274 | <b>MMPA</b> – Marine Mammal Protection Act              |
| 4237 | Commission  | 4275 | <b>MREP</b> – Marine Resource Education Program         |
| 4238 | <b>BSIA</b> – Best Scientific Information Available | 4276 | <b>MRFSS</b> – Marine Recreational Fisheries            |
| 4239 | <b>CESUs</b> – Cooperative Ecosystem Studies Units  | 4277 | Statistics Survey                                       |
| 4240 | <b>CFMC</b> – Caribbean Fisheries Management        | 4278 | <b>MRIP</b> – Marine Recreation Information Program     |
| 4241 | Council   | 4279 | <b>MSA</b> – Magnuson-Stevens Act                       |
| 4242 | <b>CIE</b> – Center for Independent Experts         | 4280 | <b>MSE</b> – Management Strategy Evaluation             |
| 4243 | <b>CIs</b> – Cooperative Institutes                 | 4281 | <b>MSY</b> – Maximum Sustainable Yield                  |
| 4244 | <b>CPUE</b> – Catch Per Unit Effort                 | 4282 | <b>NCSS</b> – NOAA Fisheries Climate Science Strategy   |
| 4245 | <b>CWA</b> – Clean Water Act                        | 4283 | <b>NEAMAP</b> – Northeast Area Monitoring and           |
| 4246 | <b>CZMA</b> – Coastal Zone Management Act           | 4284 | Assessment Program (Note: This is used twice,           |
| 4247 | <b>EBFM</b> – Ecosystem-based Fisheries             | 4285 | page 21 and 23, and both times the full thing           |
| 4248 | Management  | 4286 | was spelled out as well)                                |
| 4249 | <b>ELI</b> – Ecosystem Linkage Index                | 4287 | <b>NEFMC</b> – Northeast Fisheries Management           |
| 4250 | <b>EM/ER</b> – Electronic Monitoring and Electronic | 4288 | Council   |
| 4251 | Reporting   | 4289 | <b>NEFSC</b> – Northeast Fisheries Science Center       |
| 4252 | <b>ESA</b> – Endangered Species Act                 | 4290 | <b>NEPA</b> – National Environmental Policy Act         |
| 4253 | <b>FIS</b> – Fisheries Information System           | 4291 | <b>NGSA</b> – Next Generation Stock Assessment          |
| 4254 | <b>FMC</b> – Fisheries Management Council           | 4292 | <b>NPFMC</b> – North Pacific Fisheries Management       |
| 4255 | <b>FMO</b> – Fisheries Management Organization      | 4293 | Council   |
| 4256 | <b>FO</b> – Fisheries Organization                  | 4294 | <b>NRC</b> – National Research Council                  |
| 4257 | <b>FSC</b> – Fisheries Science Center               | 4295 | <b>NRCC</b> – Northeast Regional Coordinating           |
| 4258 | <b>FSSI</b> – Fish Stock Sustainability Index       | 4296 | Council   |
| 4259 | <b>GARFO</b> – Greater Atlantic Regional Fisheries  | 4297 | <b>NS1</b> – National Standard 1                        |
| 4260 | Office  | 4298 | <b>NWFSC</b> – Northwest Fisheries Science Center       |
| 4261 | <b>GMFMC</b> – Gulf of Mexico Fisheries             | 4299 | <b>OFL</b> – Overfishing Level                          |
| 4262 | Management Council *****                            | 4300 | <b>PFMC</b> – Pacific Fishery Management Council        |
| 4263 | <b>HAIP</b> – Habitat Assessment Improvement Plan   | 4301 | <b>PIFSC</b> – Pacific Islands Fisheries Science Center |
| 4264 | <b>HMS</b> – Highly Migratory Species               | 4302 | <b>PIRO</b> – Pacific Islands Regional Office           |
| 4265 | <b>IEAs</b> – Integrated ecosystem assessments      | 4303 | <b>PRSAIP</b> – Protected Resources Stock               |
| 4266 | <b>IUU</b> – Illegal, Unregulated, and Unreported   | 4304 | Assessment Improvement Plan                             |
| 4267 | fishing   |      |   |

- 4305 **QUEST** – Quantitative Ecology and
- 4306 Socioeconomics Training Program
- 4307 **RFMOs**- Regional Fishery Management
- 4308 Organizations
- 4309 **RO** – Regional Office
- 4310 **RTR** – Research Training and Recruitment
- 4311 **SAFE** – Stock Assessment and Fishery Evaluation
- 4312 **SAFMC** – Southeast Atlantic Fishery
- 4313 Management Council
- 4314 **SAIP** – Stock Assessment Improvement Plan
- 4315 **SAM** – State-space Assessment Model
- 4316 **SAW/SARC** – Stock Assessment
- 4317 Workshop/Stock Assessment Review
- 4318 Committee
- 4319 **SCAA** – Statistical Catch-At-Age
- 4320 **SCAL** – Statistical Catch-At-Length
- 4321 **SEDAR** – Southeast Data, Assessment, and
- 4322 Review
- 4323 **SEFIS** – Southeast Fishery Independent Survey
- 4324 **SEFSC** – Southeast Fisheries Science Center
- 4325 **SERO** – Southeast Regional Office
- 4326 **SSC** – Scientific and Statistical Committee
- 4327 **STAR** – Stock Assessment Review
- 4328 **SWFSC** – Southwest Fisheries Science Center
- 4329 **TMB** – Template Model Builder
- 4330 **ToR** – Terms of Reference
- 4331 **UNOLS** – University National Oceanographic
- 4332 Laboratory System
- 4333 **VPA** – Virtual Population Analysis
- 4334 **WCR** – West Coast Region
- 4335 **WPFMC** – Western Pacific Fishery Management
- 4336 Council
- 4337 **WPSAR** – Western Pacific Stock Assessment
- 4338 Review

4339 **Appendix A. NOAA Fisheries' Stock Assessment Classification System**

| Attribute                          | Level                         |   |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
|                                    | 0                             | 1   | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  |
| <b>Catch</b>                       | No quantitative catch data    | Some catch data, but major gaps for some fishery sectors or for historical periods such that their use in assessments is not supported                | Enough catch data establish magnitude of catch and trends in catch for a major fishery sector in order to apply a data-limited assessment method. This includes fisheries that are closed and it is known that negligible catch is occurring | Catch data is generally available for all fishery sectors to support quantitative stock assessment, but some gaps exist such as low observer coverage, high levels of self-reported catch, weak information on discard mortality | No data gaps substantially impede assessment, but catch is not without uncertainty (e.g., recreational catches estimated from surveys)                     | Very complete knowledge of total catch   |
| <b>Size and/or age composition</b> | No composition data collected | Some size or age composition data has been collected, but major gaps in coverage, not used in assessment, or historically preclude use in assessments | Enough size or age composition data has been collected to enable data-limited assessment approaches  | Enough size or age composition data is collected over a sufficient time series to be informative in age/size structured assessment models  | Enough age composition data has been collected over a sufficient time series to enable assessments methods that need age composition data from the fishery | Very complete age and size composition data, including, as needed on stock-specific basis, knowledge of ageing precision, spatial patterns or other issues |

|                     |   |  |   |  |  |   |
|---------------------|---|--|---|--|--|---|
| <b>Abundance</b>    | No indicator of stock abundance or trend in stock abundance over time | Fishery-dependent catch rates (CPUE) are available, but high uncertainty about their standardization over time; or expert opinion on degree of stock depletion over time   | Fishery-dependent catch rates (CPUE) are sufficiently standardized to enable their use in full assessments  | Limited fishery-independent survey(s) provide estimates of relative abundance; however, the temporal or spatial coverage of the stock is limited or the sampling variability is high | Complete fishery-independent survey(s) provide estimates of relative abundance, and the survey(s) cover a large proportion of the spatial extent of the stock with several years of tracking at a level of precision that supports assessments | Calibrated fishery-independent survey(s) or tag-recapture provide estimates of absolute abundance   |
| <b>Life history</b> | No life history data  | Estimates of most life history factors not based on empirical data; instead derived using proxies, meta-analyses, borrowed from other species, or without scientific basis | Estimates of some life history factors based on stock-specific empirical data, but at least one derived using life history proxies, meta-analyses, borrowed from other species, or without scientific basis. Generally supports data-poor assessments that use life history information | Estimates of most life history factors based on stock-specific empirical data  | Data are sufficient to track changes over time in at least growth  | No major gaps in life history knowledge, including detailed stock structure, spatial and temporal patterns in natural mortality, growth, and reproductive biology |

|                                 |   |   |   |   |  |   |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|---|
| <p><b>Ecosystem linkage</b></p> | <p>No linkage to ecosystem dynamic or consideration of ecosystem properties (environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey, etc.) in configuring the assessment (i.e., equilibrium conditions assumed for ecosystem)</p> | <p>Ecosystem-based hypotheses inform the assessment model structure (e.g., defining the stock boundaries and/or spatial or temporal features) and/or are used for processing assessment inputs (e.g., abundance index), but no explicit linkage to any ecosystem drivers (environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey, etc.)</p> | <p>The assessment includes some form of variability or effect to explicitly account for unidentified ecosystem dynamic(s) (e.g., time/space "regimes", random variation, or other approaches to changing features without direct inclusion of ecosystem data)</p> | <p>One or more assessment features is linked to a dynamic (i.e., data) from at least one of the following categories: environment, climate, habitat, predator-prey data (e.g., covariate)</p> | <p>The assessment model is linked to at least one ecosystem dynamic, and one or more process studies directly support the manner in which environmental, climate, habitat, and/or predator-prey dynamics are incorporated (e.g., consumption rates measured and covariate informed by results)</p> | <p>The assessment approach is configured to be coupled or linked with an ecosystem process (e.g., multispecies, coupled biophysical, climate-linked models)</p> |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|---|--|---|

## Appendix B – Executive Summary

A variety of national methods and initiatives have recently been proposed to help meet the objectives of NOAA Fisheries' next generation stock assessment (NGSA) enterprise. As detailed in Section III, the three main goals are to move stock assessments toward expanded scope through ecosystem linkages, improved assessment through innovative science, and engaged in a more timely, efficient, and effective process. Implementation of these national initiatives has already begun in several regions around the country and the data collection and supporting analyses have been enormous. It is imperative that the output of these initiatives be assimilated within the stock assessment process to highlight progress toward NGSA and increase communication to stakeholders and fishery managers.

Over the past several years, a new framework has been proposed to start the process of integrating ecosystem and socioeconomic information into the stock assessments of the North Pacific region (Shotwell et al. 2016). These stock profiles and ecosystem considerations (SPECs) generate an ecosystem baseline for a given stock or stock complex that start with four primary elements. First, an overall ecosystem status rating summarizes the results from the national initiatives to provide immediate and succinct context for the priorities of the stock or stock complex. The rating should include subjects relevant to the particular fishery management plan of the stock (e.g., data classification, prioritization, and vulnerability assessment). The rating is based on four categories of low (L), moderate (M), high (H), and very high (VH). These ratings indicate whether this particular factor is of low to high importance for the stock (e.g., a low habitat prioritization implies that more habitat research would have low impact for improvement of this stock assessment). The second element starts as an informal life history conceptual model that provides the relevant information on the stock life history stages and potential survival bottlenecks between stages. The third element, is a qualitative stock profile that follows the format of the overall rating but further identifies strengths and weaknesses over a suite of response categories (e.g., stock status, economics, biology). Finally, the first three elements are used in concert to develop a list of potential ecosystem or socioeconomic indicators that are then compiled for monitoring as time series in a graphical report card.

Another step toward the NGSA framework is the development of a succinct and standard reporting template of stock assessment results. This template can be used to communicate results quickly and efficiently to the broader community of stakeholders, fishery managers, and other interested parties. It also reduces time to compile results, while allowing comparisons across a large variety of stocks. The following is an example of such a template that summarizes relevant stock assessment results and SPEC elements for Alaska sablefish. These executive summaries can be somewhat fluid in their complexity and may be enhanced with information from process studies or benchmark reviews through highlights within the summary. Also, intensive reviews may lead to recommendations that could be included in terms of reference sections to guide priorities for future research. Ultimately, this executive summary and the synthesis of the national initiatives through the SPEC framework provide the necessary building blocks to move toward an ecosystem approach to fisheries management.

Citation: Shotwell, S.K., D.H. Hanselman, S. Zador, and K. Aydin. 2016. Stock-specific Profiles and Ecosystem Considerations (SPEC) for Alaska groundfish fishery management plans. Report to Joint Groundfish Plan Team, September 2016. 15 pp.



## Sablefish (*Anoplopoma fimbria*)

- FMP: Bering Sea Aleutian Islands and Gulf of Alaska
- Custom statistical catch-at-age model (ADMB), last data year 2016

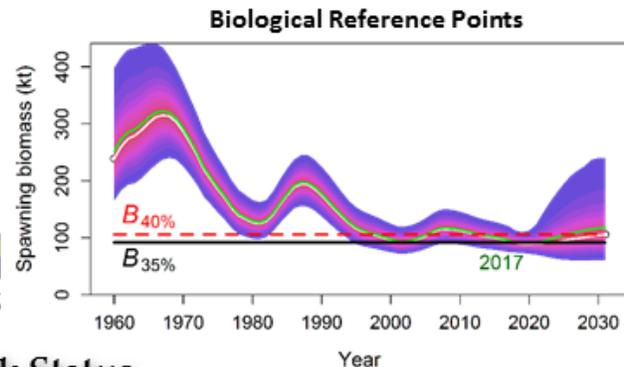
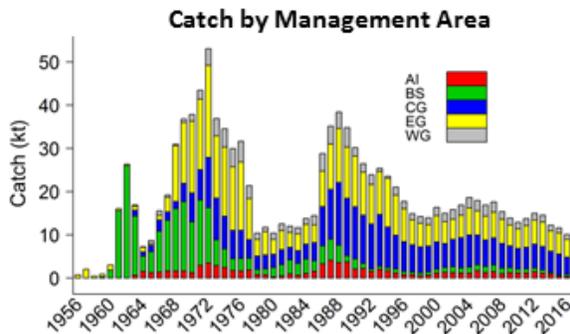


### NOAA Fisheries Data Classification System

| Category       | Catch | Size/Age | Abundance | Life History | Ecosystem |
|----------------|-------|----------|-----------|--------------|-----------|
| Current/Target | 5/5   | 5/5      | 4/5       | 4/5          | 1/4       |

### Stock Assessment

Benchmark assessment in 2016 included CIE recommendations to: 1) account for whale depredation on the survey and fishery, and 2) propagate more of the structural uncertainty of management quantities.



### Stock Status

This stock is not subjected to overfishing, currently overfished, nor approaching an overfished condition.

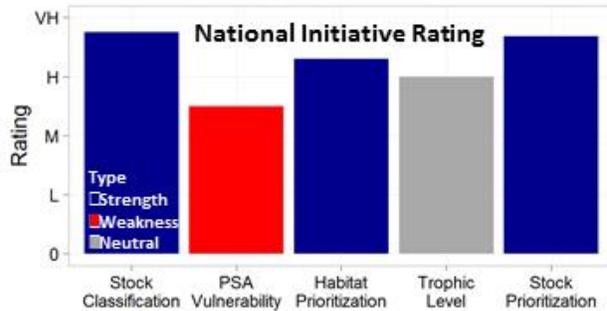
| Year | ABC    | OFL    | Total Biomass | B/ B_MS <sub>Y</sub> | F/ F_MS <sub>Y</sub> | Recruits (mill #s) | Total Catch | Ex-Value (mill \$) |
|------|--------|--------|---------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| 2012 | 17,240 | 20,400 | 257,952       | 1.126                | 0.675                | 10.55              | 15,046      | 127.4              |
| 2013 | 16,230 | 19,180 | 242,524       | 1.095                | 0.655                | 1.24               | 14,468      | 90.8               |
| 2014 | 13,722 | 16,225 | 231,726       | 1.072                | 0.576                | 9.24               | 12,156      | 95.5               |
| 2015 | 13,657 | 16,128 | 231,493       | 1.055                | 0.574                | 17.25              | 11,463      | 93.7               |
| 2016 | 11,795 | 13,397 | 231,796       | 1.029                | 0.533                | 12.88              | 9,993       |                    |
| 2017 | 13,083 | 15,931 | 239,244       | 1.002                | 0.061                |                    |             |                    |

Assessment: <http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/Docs/2016/GOAsablefish.pdf>

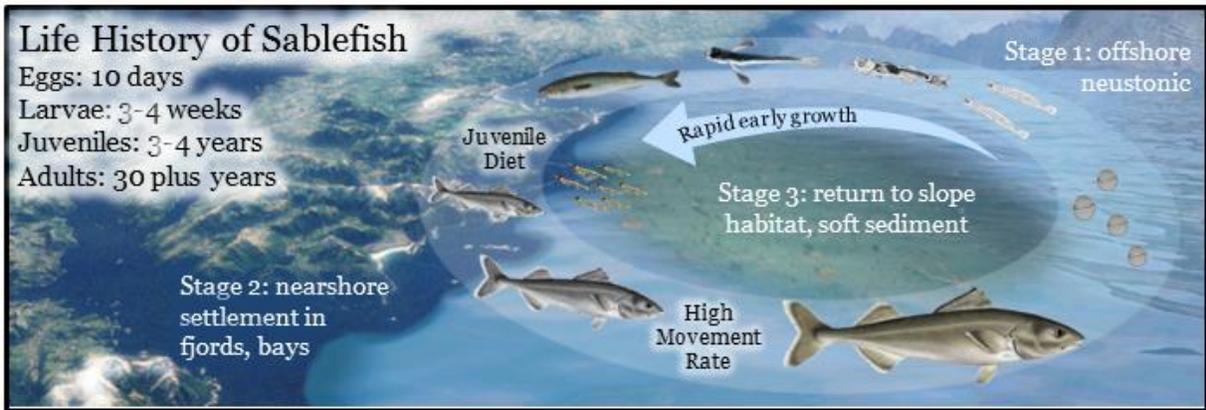


## Sablefish (*Anoplopoma fimbria*)

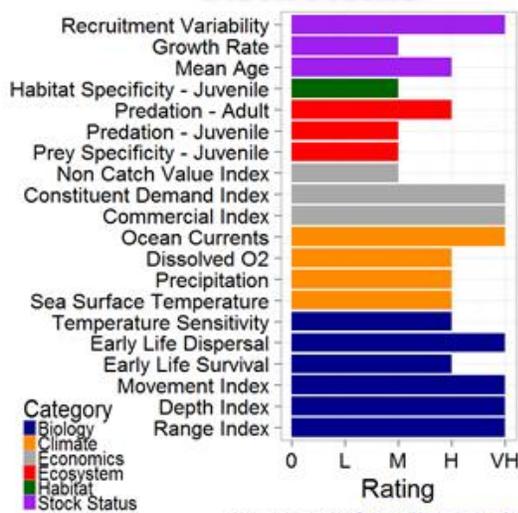
## Terms of Reference



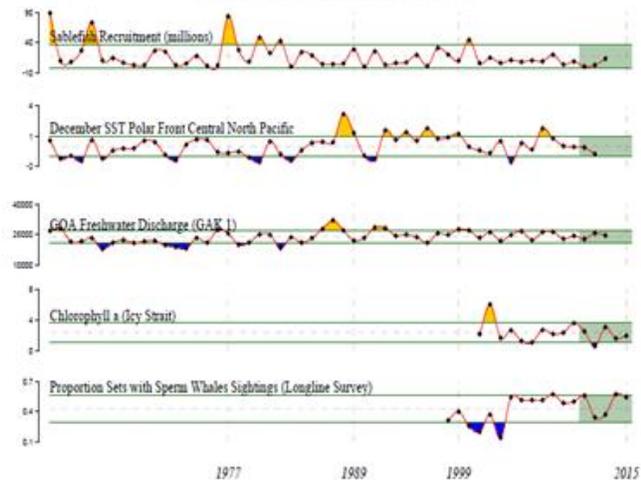
- 1) Explore spatial model for defining regional recruitment contribution
- 2) Research energetic condition as life-stage specific recruitment indicators
- 3) Improve understanding of spawning dynamics (e.g. timing, location)
- 4) Continue ecosystem research to improve tactical advice (forecasts)



## Stock Profile



## Stock Indicators



Assessment: <http://www.afsc.noaa.gov/REFM/Docs/2016/GOAsablefish.pdf>